



(51) International Patent Classification:
A61K 48/00 (2006.01)

(21) International Application Number:
PCT/US2017/012614

(22) International Filing Date:
6 January 2017 (06.01.2017)

(25) Filing Language: English

(26) Publication Language: English

(30) Priority Data:
62/276,722 8 January 2016 (08.01.2016) US
62/343,514 31 May 2016 (31.05.2016) US
62/345,476 3 June 2016 (03.06.2016) US
62/409,180 17 October 2016 (17.10.2016) US
62/420,969 11 November 2016 (11.11.2016) US

(71) Applicant: **PROTIVA BIOTHERAPEUTICS, INC.**
[CA/CA]; 100-8900 Glenlyon Parkway, Burnaby, British
Columbia V5J 5J8 (CA).

(72) Inventors; and

(71) Applicants : **CUCONATI, Andrea** [US/US]; 100-8900
Glenlyon Parkway, Burnaby, British Columbia V5J 5J8
(CA). **LEE, Amy C. H.** [CA/CA]; 100-8900 Glenlyon
Parkway, Burnaby, British Columbia V5J 5J8 (CA). **RIJN-
BRAND, Cornelis A.** [NL/US]; 100-8900 Glenlyon Park-
way, Burnaby, British Columbia V5J 5J8 (CA). **SOFIA,
Michael J.** [US/US]; 100-8900 Glenlyon Parkway, Burn-
aby, British Columbia V5J 5J8 (CA).

(74) Agents: **MALEN, Peter L.** et al.; VIKSNINS HARRIS &
PADYS PLLP, 7851 Metro Parkway, Suite 325, Bloom-
ington, Minnesota 55425 (US).

(81) Designated States (unless otherwise indicated, for every
kind of national protection available): AE, AG, AL, AM,
AO, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BH, BN, BR, BW, BY,
BZ, CA, CH, CL, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DJ, DK, DM,
DO, DZ, EC, EE, EG, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, GT,
HN, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IR, IS, JP, KE, KG, KH, KN,
KP, KR, KW, KZ, LA, LC, LK, LR, LS, LU, LY, MA,
MD, ME, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MY, MZ, NA, NG,
NI, NO, NZ, OM, PA, PE, PG, PH, PL, PT, QA, RO, RS,
RU, RW, SA, SC, SD, SE, SG, SK, SL, SM, ST, SV, SY,
TH, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VC, VN,
ZA, ZM, ZW.

(84) Designated States (unless otherwise indicated, for every
kind of regional protection available): ARIPO (BW, GH,
GM, KE, LR, LS, MW, MZ, NA, RW, SD, SL, ST, SZ,
TZ, UG, ZM, ZW), Eurasian (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, RU,
TJ, TM), European (AL, AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE,
DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LT, LU,
LV, MC, MK, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, RS, SE, SI, SK,
SM, TR), OAPI (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ,
GW, KM, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

Published:

— without international search report and to be republished
upon receipt of that report (Rule 48.2(g))

(54) Title: THERAPEUTIC COMPOSITIONS AND METHODS FOR TREATING HEPATITIS B

(57) Abstract: The invention provides therapeutic combinations and therapeutic methods that are useful for treating Hepatitis B.



THERAPEUTIC COMPOSITIONS AND METHODS FOR TREATING HEPATITIS B**Cross-reference to Related Applications**

This patent application claims the benefit of priority of U.S. application serial No. 62/276,722, filed January 08, 2016 and of U.S. application serial No. 62/343,514, filed May 31, 2016, and of U.S. application serial No. 62/345,476, filed June 03, 2016, and of U.S. application serial No. 62/409,180, filed October 17, 2016, and of U.S. application serial No. 62/420,969, filed November 11, 2016, which applications are herein incorporated by reference.

Background

Hepatitis B virus (abbreviated as "HBV") is a member of the Hepadnavirus family. The virus particle (sometimes referred to as a virion) includes an outer lipid envelope and an icosahedral nucleocapsid core composed of protein. The nucleocapsid encloses the viral DNA and a DNA polymerase that has reverse transcriptase activity. The outer envelope contains embedded proteins that are involved in viral binding of, and entry into, susceptible cells, typically liver hepatocytes. In addition to the infectious viral particles, filamentous and spherical bodies lacking a core can be found in the serum of infected individuals. These particles are not infectious and are composed of the lipid and protein that forms part of the surface of the virion, which is called the surface antigen (HBsAg), and is produced in excess during the life cycle of the virus.

The genome of HBV is made of circular DNA, but it is unusual because the DNA is not fully double-stranded. One end of the full length strand is linked to the viral DNA polymerase. The genome is 3020–3320 nucleotides long (for the full-length strand) and 1700–2800 nucleotides long (for the shorter strand). The negative-sense (non-coding) is complementary to the viral mRNA. The viral DNA is found in the nucleus soon after infection of the cell. There are four known genes encoded by the genome, called C, X, P, and S. The core protein is coded for by gene C (HBcAg), and its start codon is preceded by an upstream in-frame AUG start codon, from which the pre-core protein is produced. HBcAg is produced by proteolytic processing of the pre-core protein. The DNA polymerase is encoded by gene P. Gene S is the gene that codes for the surface antigen (HBsAg). The HBsAg gene is one long open reading frame but contains three in frame "start" (ATG) codons that divide the gene into three sections, pre-S1, pre-S2, and

S. Because of the multiple start codons, polypeptides of three different sizes called large, middle, and small are produced. The function of the protein coded for by gene X is not fully understood but it is associated with the development of liver cancer. Replication of HBV is a complex process. Although replication takes place in the liver, the virus spreads to the blood where viral
5 proteins and antibodies against them are found in infected people. The structure, replication and biology of HBV is reviewed in D. Glebe and C.M.Bremer, *Seminars in Liver Disease*, Vol. 33, No. 2, pages 103-112 (2013).

Infection of humans with HBV can cause an infectious inflammatory illness of the liver. Infected individuals may not exhibit symptoms for many years. It is estimated that about a third
10 of the world population has been infected at one point in their lives, including 350 million who are chronic carriers.

The virus is transmitted by exposure to infectious blood or body fluids. Perinatal infection can also be a major route of infection. The acute illness causes liver inflammation, vomiting, jaundice, and possibly death. Chronic hepatitis B may eventually cause cirrhosis and
15 liver cancer.

Although most people who are infected with HBV clear the infection through the action of their immune system, some infected people suffer an aggressive course of infection (fulminant hepatitis); while others are chronically infected thereby increasing their chance of liver disease. Several medications are currently approved for treatment of HBV infection, but
20 infected individuals respond with various degrees of success to these medications, and none of these medications clear the virus from the infected person.

Hepatitis D virus (HDV) is a small circular enveloped RNA virus that can propagate only in the presence of the hepatitis B virus (HBV). In particular, HDV requires the HBV surface antigen protein to propagate itself. Infection with both HBV and HDV results in more severe
25 complications compared to infection with HBV alone. These complications include a greater likelihood of experiencing liver failure in acute infections and a rapid progression to liver cirrhosis, with an increased chance of developing liver cancer in chronic infections. In combination with hepatitis B virus, hepatitis D has the highest mortality rate of all the hepatitis infections. The routes of transmission of HDV are similar to those for HBV. Infection is largely

restricted to persons at high risk of HBV infection, particularly injecting drug users and persons receiving clotting factor concentrates.

Thus, there is a continuing need for compositions and methods for the treatment of HBV infection in animals (e.g. humans), as well as for the treatment of HBV/HDV infection in
5 animals (e.g. humans).

Summary

The present invention provides therapeutic combinations and therapeutic methods that are useful for treating viral infections such as HBV.

The Examples presented herein disclose the results of numerous combination (e.g., two-
10 way combination) studies using agents having differing mechanisms of action against HBV. As described herein, several combinations of agents showed an unexpected, synergistic interaction, and combinations generally lacked antagonism.

In one embodiment the invention provides a method for treating hepatitis B in an animal comprising administering to the animal, at least two agents selected from the group consisting
15 of:

- a) reverse transcriptase inhibitors;
- b) capsid inhibitors;
- c) cccDNA formation inhibitors;
- d) sAg secretion inhibitors;
- 20 e) oligomeric nucleotides targeted to the Hepatitis B genome; and
- f) immunostimulators.

In another embodiment the invention provides a kit comprising at least two agents selected from the group consisting of:

- a) reverse transcriptase inhibitors;
- 25 b) capsid inhibitors;
- c) cccDNA formation inhibitors;
- d) sAg secretion inhibitors;
- e) oligomeric nucleotides targeted to the Hepatitis B genome; and
- f) immunostimulators

30 for use in combination to treat or prevent a viral infection, such as Hepatitis B.

In another embodiment the invention provides a kit comprising at least three agents selected from the group consisting of:

- a) reverse transcriptase inhibitors;
- b) capsid inhibitors;
- 5 c) cccDNA formation inhibitors;
- d) sAg secretion inhibitors;
- e) oligomeric nucleotides targeted to the Hepatitis B genome; and
- f) immunostimulators

for use in combination to treat or prevent a viral infection, such as Hepatitis B.

10 In another embodiment the invention provides a pharmaceutical composition that comprises a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and at least two agents selected from the group consisting of:

- a) reverse transcriptase inhibitors;
- b) capsid inhibitors;
- 15 c) cccDNA formation inhibitors;
- d) sAg secretion inhibitors;
- e) oligomeric nucleotides targeted to the Hepatitis B genome; and
- f) immunostimulators.

In another embodiment the invention provides a pharmaceutical composition that
20 comprises a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and at least three agents selected from the group consisting of:

- a) reverse transcriptase inhibitors;
- b) capsid inhibitors;
- c) cccDNA formation inhibitors;
- 25 d) sAg secretion inhibitors;
- e) oligomeric nucleotides targeted to the Hepatitis B genome; and
- f) immunostimulators.

Detailed Description

Administration of a compound as a pharmaceutically acceptable acid or base salt may be appropriate. Examples of pharmaceutically acceptable salts are organic acid addition salts formed with acids which form a physiological acceptable anion, for example, tosylate, methanesulfonate, acetate, citrate, malonate, tartrate, succinate, benzoate, ascorbate, α -ketoglutarate, and α -glycerophosphate. Suitable inorganic salts may also be formed, including hydrochloride, sulfate, nitrate, bicarbonate, and carbonate salts.

Pharmaceutically acceptable salts may be obtained using standard procedures well known in the art, for example by reacting a sufficiently basic compound such as an amine with a suitable acid affording a physiologically acceptable anion. Alkali metal (for example, sodium, potassium or lithium) or alkaline earth metal (for example calcium) salts of carboxylic acids can also be made.

Reverse Transcriptase Inhibitors

In certain embodiments, the reverse transcriptase inhibitor is a nucleoside analog.

In certain embodiments, the reverse transcriptase inhibitor is a nucleoside analog reverse-transcriptase inhibitor (NARTI or NRTI).

In certain embodiments, the reverse transcriptase inhibitor is a nucleotide analog reverse-transcriptase inhibitor (NtARTI or NtRTI).

The term reverse transcriptase inhibitor includes, but is not limited to: entecavir, clevudine, telbivudine, lamivudine, adefovir, and tenofovir, tenofovir disoproxil, tenofovir alafenamide, adefovir dipovoxil, (1R,2R,3R,5R)-3-(6-amino-9H-9-puriny)-2-fluoro-5-(hydroxymethyl)-4-methylenecyclopentan-1-ol (described in U.S. Patent No. 8,816,074), emtricitabine, abacavir, elvucitabine, ganciclovir, lobucavir, famciclovir, penciclovir, and amdoxovir.

The term reverse transcriptase inhibitor includes, but is not limited to, entecavir, lamivudine, and (1R,2R,3R,5R)-3-(6-amino-9H-9-puriny)-2-fluoro-5-(hydroxymethyl)-4-methylenecyclopentan-1-ol.

The term reverse transcriptase inhibitor includes, but is not limited to a covalently bound phosphoramidate or phosphonamidate moiety of the above-mentioned reverse transcriptase inhibitors, or as described in, for example, U.S. Patent No. 8,816,074, US 2011/0245484 A1,

and US 2008/0286230 A1.

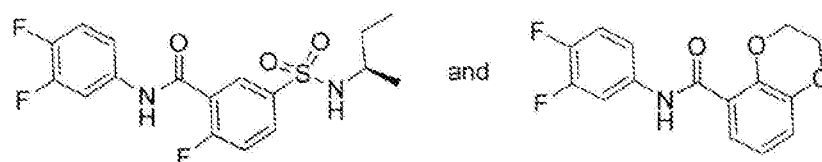
The term reverse transcriptase inhibitor includes, but is not limited to, nucleotide analogs that comprise a phosphoramidate moiety, such as, methyl (((1R,3R,4R,5R)-3-(6-amino-9H-purin-9-yl)-4-fluoro-5-hydroxy-2-methylenecyclopentyl)methoxy)(phenoxy)phosphoryl)-(D or L)-alaninate and methyl (((1R,2R,3R,4R)-3-fluoro-2-hydroxy-5-methylene-4-(6-oxo-1,6-dihydro-9H-purin-9-yl)cyclopentyl)methoxy)(phenoxy)phosphoryl)-(D or L)-alaninate. Also included are the individual diastereomers thereof, which includes, for example, methyl ((R)-(((1R,3R,4R,5R)-3-(6-amino-9H-purin-9-yl)-4-fluoro-5-hydroxy-2-methylenecyclopentyl)methoxy)(phenoxy)phosphoryl)-(D or L)-alaninate and methyl ((S)-(((1R,3R,4R,5R)-3-(6-amino-9H-purin-9-yl)-4-fluoro-5-hydroxy-2-methylenecyclopentyl)methoxy)(phenoxy)phosphoryl)-(D or L)-alaninate.

The term reverse transcriptase inhibitor includes, but is not limited to a phosphonamidate moiety, such as, tenofovir alafenamide, as well as those described in US 2008/0286230 A1. Methods for preparing stereoselective phosphoramidate or phosphonamidate containing actives are described in, for example, U.S. Patent No. 8,816,074, as well as US 2011/0245484 A1 and US 2008/0286230 A1.

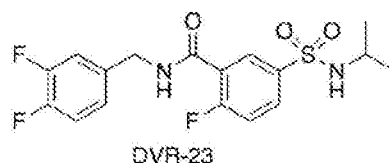
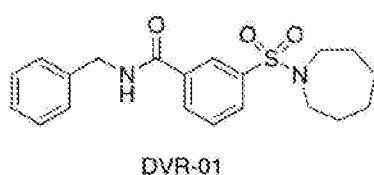
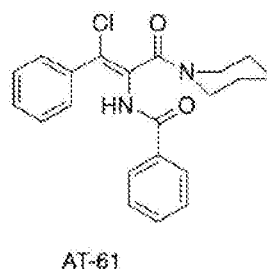
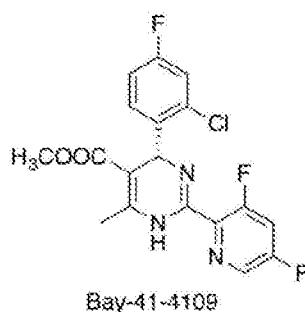
Capsid Inhibitors

As described herein the term "capsid inhibitor" includes compounds that are capable of inhibiting the expression and/or function of a capsid protein either directly or indirectly. For example, a capsid inhibitor may include, but is not limited to, any compound that inhibits capsid assembly, induces formation of non-capsid polymers, promotes excess capsid assembly or misdirected capsid assembly, affects capsid stabilization, and/or inhibits encapsidation of RNA. Capsid inhibitors also include any compound that inhibits capsid function in a downstream event(s) within the replication process (e.g., viral DNA synthesis, transport of relaxed circular DNA (rcDNA) into the nucleus, covalently closed circular DNA (cccDNA) formation, virus maturation, budding and/or release, and the like). For example, in certain embodiments, the inhibitor detectably inhibits the expression level or biological activity of the capsid protein as measured, e.g., using an assay described herein. In certain embodiments, the inhibitor inhibits the level of rcDNA and downstream products of viral life cycle by at least 5%, at least 10%, at least 20%, at least 50%, at least 75%, or at least 90%.

The term capsid inhibitor includes compounds described in International Patent Applications Publication Numbers WO2013006394, WO2014106019, and WO2014089296, including the following compounds:



The term capsid inhibitor also includes the compounds **Bay-41-4109** (see International Patent Application Publication Number WO/2013/144129), **AT-61** (see International Patent Application Publication Number WO/1998/33501; and King, RW, et al., *Antimicrob Agents Chemother.*, **1998**, 42, 12, 3179–3186), **DVR-01** and **DVR-23** (see International Patent Application Publication Number WO 2013/006394; and Campagna, MR, et al., *J. of Virology*, 2013, 87, 12, 6931, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof;

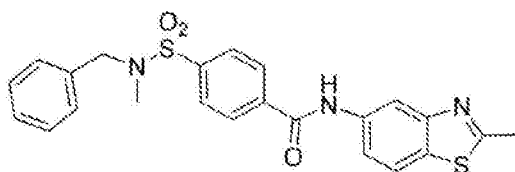


cccDNA Formation Inhibitors

Covalently closed circular DNA (cccDNA) is generated in the cell nucleus from viral rcDNA and serves as the transcription template for viral mRNAs. As described herein, the term “cccDNA formation inhibitor” includes compounds that are capable of inhibiting the formation and/or stability of cccDNA either directly or indirectly. For example, a cccDNA

formation inhibitor may include, but is not limited to, any compound that inhibits capsid disassembly, rcDNA entry into the nucleus, and/or the conversion of rcDNA into cccDNA. For example, in certain embodiments, the inhibitor detectably inhibits the formation and/or stability of the cccDNA as measured, e.g., using an assay described herein. In certain embodiments, the inhibitor inhibits the formation and/or stability of cccDNA by at least 5%, at least 10%, at least 20%, at least 50%, at least 75%, or at least 90%.

The term cccDNA formation inhibitor includes compounds described in International Patent Application Publication Number WO2013130703, including the following compound:



The term cccDNA formation inhibitor includes, but is not limited to those generally and specifically described in United States Patent Application Publication Number US 2015/0038515 A1. The term cccDNA formation inhibitor includes, but is not limited to, 1-(phenylsulfonyl)-N-(pyridin-4-ylmethyl)-1H-indole-2-carboxamide; 1-Benzenesulfonyl-pyrrolidine-2-carboxylic acid (pyridin-4-ylmethyl)-amide; 2-(2-chloro-N-(2-chloro-5-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl)-4-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl)sulfonamido)-N-(pyridin-4-ylmethyl)acetamide; 2-(4-chloro-N-(2-chloro-5-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl)phenyl)sulfonamido)-N-(pyridin-4-ylmethyl)acetamide; 2-(N-(2-chloro-5-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl)-4-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl)sulfonamido)-N-(pyridin-4-ylmethyl)acetamide; 2-(N-(2-chloro-5-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl)-4-methoxyphenyl)sulfonamido)-N-(pyridin-4-ylmethyl)acetamide; 2-(N-(2-chloro-5-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl)phenyl)sulfonamido)-N-((1-methylpiperidin-4-yl)methyl)acetamide; 2-(N-(2-chloro-5-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl)phenyl)sulfonamido)-N-(piperidin-4-ylmethyl)acetamide; 2-(N-(2-chloro-5-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl)phenyl)sulfonamido)-N-(pyridin-4-ylmethyl)propanamide; 2-(N-(2-chloro-5-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl)phenyl)sulfonamido)-N-(pyridin-3-ylmethyl)acetamide; 2-(N-(2-chloro-5-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl)phenyl)sulfonamido)-N-(pyrimidin-5-ylmethyl)acetamide; 2-(N-(2-chloro-5-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl)phenyl)sulfonamido)-N-(pyrimidin-4-ylmethyl)acetamide; 2-(N-(5-chloro-2-fluorophenyl)phenyl)sulfonamido)-N-(pyridin-4-ylmethyl)acetamide; 2-[(2-

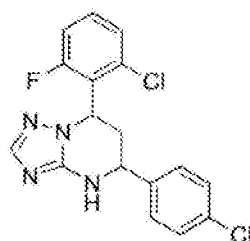
chloro-5-trifluoromethyl-phenyl)-(4-fluoro-benzenesulfonyl)-amino]-N-pyridin-4-ylmethyl-acetamide; 2-[(2-chloro-5-trifluoromethyl-phenyl)-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-amino]-N-pyridin-4-ylmethyl-acetamide; 2-[benzenesulfonyl-(2-bromo-5-trifluoromethyl-phenyl)-amino]-N-pyridin-4-ylmethyl-acetamide; 2-[benzenesulfonyl-(2-chloro-5-trifluoromethyl-phenyl)-amino]-N-(2-methyl-benzothiazol-5-yl)-acetamide; 2-[benzenesulfonyl-(2-chloro-5-trifluoromethyl-phenyl)-amino]-N-[4-(4-methyl-piperazin-1-yl)-benzyl]-acetamide; 2-[benzenesulfonyl-(2-chloro-5-trifluoromethyl-phenyl)-amino]-N-[3-(4-methyl-piperazin-1-yl)-benzyl]-acetamide; 2-[benzenesulfonyl-(2-chloro-5-trifluoromethyl-phenyl)-amino]-N-benzyl-acetamide; 2-[benzenesulfonyl-(2-chloro-5-trifluoromethyl-phenyl)-amino]-N-pyridin-4-ylmethyl-acetamide; 2-[benzenesulfonyl-(2-chloro-5-trifluoromethyl-phenyl)-amino]-N-pyridin-4-ylmethyl-propionamide; 2-[benzenesulfonyl-(2-fluoro-5-trifluoromethyl-phenyl)-amino]-N-pyridin-4-ylmethyl-acetamide; 4-(N-(2-chloro-5-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl)phenylsulfonamido)-N-(pyridin-4-yl-methyl)butanamide; 4-((2-(N-(2-chloro-5-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl)phenylsulfonamido)-acetamido)-methyl)-1,1-dimethylpiperidin-1-ium chloride; 4-(benzyl-methyl-sulfamoyl)-N-(2-chloro-5-trifluoromethyl-phenyl)-benzamide; 4-(benzyl-methyl-sulfamoyl)-N-(2-methyl-1H-indol-5-yl)-benzamide; 4-(benzyl-methyl-sulfamoyl)-N-(2-methyl-1H-indol-5-yl)-benzamide; 4-(benzyl-methyl-sulfamoyl)-N-(2-methyl-benzothiazol-5-yl)-benzamide; 4-(benzyl-methyl-sulfamoyl)-N-(2-methyl-benzothiazol-6-yl)-benzamide; 4-(benzyl-methyl-sulfamoyl)-N-(2-methyl-benzothiazol-6-yl)-benzamide; 4-(benzyl-methyl-sulfamoyl)-N-pyridin-4-ylmethyl-benzamide; N-(2-aminoethyl)-2-(N-(2-chloro-5-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl)phenylsulfonamido)-acetamide; N-(2-chloro-5-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl)-N-(2-(3,4-dihydro-2,6-naphthyridin-2(1H)-yl)-2-oxoethyl)benzenesulfonamide; N-benzothiazol-6-yl-4-(benzyl-methyl-sulfamoyl)-benzamide; N-benzothiazol-6-yl-4-(benzyl-methyl-sulfamoyl)-benzamide; tert-butyl (2-(2-(N-(2-chloro-5-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl)phenylsulfonamido)acetamido)-ethyl)carbamate; and tert-butyl 4-((2-(N-(2-chloro-5-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl)phenylsulfonamido)-acetamido)-methyl)piperidine-1-carboxylate, and optionally, combinations thereof.

sAg Secretion Inhibitors

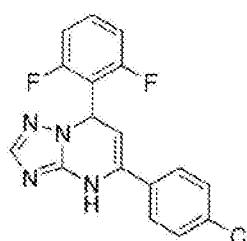
As described herein the term "sAg secretion inhibitor" includes compounds that are capable of inhibiting, either directly or indirectly, the secretion of sAg (S, M and/or L surface antigens) bearing subviral particles and/or DNA containing viral particles from HBV-infected

cells. For example, in certain embodiments, the inhibitor detectably inhibits the secretion of sAg as measured, e.g., using assays known in the art or described herein, e.g., ELISA assay or by Western Blot. In certain embodiments, the inhibitor inhibits the secretion of sAg by at least 5%, at least 10%, at least 20%, at least 50%, at least 75%, or at least 90%. In certain
5 embodiments, the inhibitor reduces serum levels of sAg in a patient by at least 5%, at least 10%, at least 20%, at least 50%, at least 75%, or at least 90%.

The term sAg secretion inhibitor includes compounds described in United States Patent Number 8,921,381, as well as compounds described in United States Patent Application Publication Numbers 2015/0087659 and 2013/0303552. For example, the term includes the
10 compounds PBHBV-001 and PBHBV-2-15, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof:



PBHBV-001



PBHBV-2-15

Immunostimulators

The term “immunostimulator” includes compounds that are capable of modulating an immune response (e.g., stimulate an immune response (e.g., an adjuvant)). The term
15 immunostimulators includes polyinosinic:polycytidylic acid (poly I:C) and interferons.

The term immunostimulators includes agonists of stimulator of IFN genes (STING) and interleukins. The term also includes HBsAg release inhibitors, TLR-7 agonists (GS-9620, RG-7795), T-cell stimulators (GS-4774), RIG-1 inhibitors (SB-9200), and SMAC-mimetics (Birinapant). The term immunostimulators also includes anti-PD-1 antibodies, and fragments
20 thereof.

Oligomeric Nucleotides

The term oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome includes Arrowhead-ARC-520 (see United States Patent Number 8,809,293; and Wooddell CI, et al., *Molecular Therapy*, **2013**, 21, 5, 973–985).

The oligomeric nucleotides can be designed to target one or more genes and/or transcripts of the HBV genome. Examples of such siRNA molecules are the siRNA molecules set forth in Table A herein.

5 The term oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome also includes isolated, double stranded, siRNA molecules, that each include a sense strand and an antisense strand that is hybridized to the sense strand. The siRNA target one or more genes and/or transcripts of the HBV genome. Examples of siRNA molecules are the siRNA molecules set forth in Table A herein.

10 In another aspect, term includes the isolated sense and antisense strands are set forth in Table B herein.

The term "Hepatitis B virus" (abbreviated as HBV) refers to a virus species of the genus Orthohepadnavirus, which is a part of the Hepadnaviridae family of viruses, and that is capable of causing liver inflammation in humans.

15 The term "Hepatitis D virus" (abbreviated as HDV) refers to a virus species of the genus Deltaviridae, which is capable of causing liver inflammation in humans.

The term "small-interfering RNA" or "siRNA" as used herein refers to double stranded RNA (*i.e.*, duplex RNA) that is capable of reducing or inhibiting the expression of a target gene or sequence (*e.g.*, by mediating the degradation or inhibiting the translation of mRNAs which are complementary to the siRNA sequence) when the siRNA is in the same cell as the target gene or sequence. The siRNA may have substantial or complete identity to the target gene or sequence, or may comprise a region of mismatch (*i.e.*, a mismatch motif). In certain embodiments, the siRNAs may be about 19-25 (duplex) nucleotides in length, and is preferably about 20-24, 21-22, or 21-23 (duplex) nucleotides in length. siRNA duplexes may comprise 3' overhangs of about 1 to about 4 nucleotides or about 2 to about 3 nucleotides and 5' phosphate termini. Examples of siRNA include, without limitation, a double-stranded polynucleotide molecule assembled from two separate stranded molecules, wherein one strand is the sense strand and the other is the complementary antisense strand.

25 Preferably, siRNA are chemically synthesized. siRNA can also be generated by cleavage of longer dsRNA (*e.g.*, dsRNA greater than about 25 nucleotides in length) with the *E. coli* RNase III or Dicer. These enzymes process the dsRNA into biologically active siRNA (*see, e.g.*,
30

Yang *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 99:9942-9947 (2002); Calegari *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 99:14236 (2002); Byrom *et al.*, *Ambion TechNotes*, 10(1):4-6 (2003); Kawasaki *et al.*, *Nucleic Acids Res.*, 31:981-987 (2003); Knight *et al.*, *Science*, 293:2269-2271 (2001); and Robertson *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.*, 243:82 (1968)). Preferably, dsRNA are at least 50 nucleotides
 5 to about 100, 200, 300, 400, or 500 nucleotides in length. A dsRNA may be as long as 1000, 1500, 2000, 5000 nucleotides in length, or longer. The dsRNA can encode for an entire gene transcript or a partial gene transcript. In certain instances, siRNA may be encoded by a plasmid (*e.g.*, transcribed as sequences that automatically fold into duplexes with hairpin loops).

The phrase "inhibiting expression of a target gene" refers to the ability of a siRNA to
 10 silence, reduce, or inhibit expression of a target gene (*e.g.*, a gene within the HBV genome). To examine the extent of gene silencing, a test sample (*e.g.*, a biological sample from an organism of interest expressing the target gene or a sample of cells in culture expressing the target gene) is contacted with a siRNA that silences, reduces, or inhibits expression of the target gene. Expression of the target gene in the test sample is compared to expression of the target gene in a
 15 control sample (*e.g.*, a biological sample from an organism of interest expressing the target gene or a sample of cells in culture expressing the target gene) that is not contacted with the siRNA. Control samples (*e.g.*, samples expressing the target gene) may be assigned a value of 100%. In particular embodiments, silencing, inhibition, or reduction of expression of a target gene is achieved when the value of the test sample relative to the control sample (*e.g.*, buffer only, an
 20 siRNA sequence that targets a different gene, a scrambled siRNA sequence, *etc.*) is about 100%, 99%, 98%, 97%, 96%, 95%, 94%, 93%, 92%, 91%, 90%, 89%, 88%, 87%, 86%, 85%, 84%, 83%, 82%, 81%, 80%, 79%, 78%, 77%, 76%, 75%, 70%, 65%, 60%, 55%, 50%, 45%, 40%, 35%, 30%, 25%, 20%, 15%, 10%, 5%, or 0%. Suitable assays include, without limitation, examination of protein or mRNA levels using techniques known to those of skill in the art, such
 25 as, *e.g.*, dot blots, Northern blots, *in situ* hybridization, ELISA, immunoprecipitation, enzyme function, as well as phenotypic assays known to those of skill in the art. An "effective amount" or "therapeutically effective amount" of a therapeutic nucleic acid such as a siRNA is an amount sufficient to produce the desired effect, *e.g.*, an inhibition of expression of a target sequence in comparison to the normal expression level detected in the absence of a siRNA. In particular
 30 embodiments, inhibition of expression of a target gene or target sequence is achieved when the

value obtained with a siRNA relative to the control (*e.g.*, buffer only, an siRNA sequence that targets a different gene, a scrambled siRNA sequence, *etc.*) is about 100%, 99%, 98%, 97%, 96%, 95%, 94%, 93%, 92%, 91%, 90%, 89%, 88%, 87%, 86%, 85%, 84%, 83%, 82%, 81%, 80%, 79%, 78%, 77%, 76%, 75%, 70%, 65%, 60%, 55%, 50%, 45%, 40%, 35%, 30%, 25%, 20%, 15%, 10%, 5%, or 0%. Suitable assays for measuring the expression of a target gene or target sequence include, but are not limited to, examination of protein or mRNA levels using techniques known to those of skill in the art, such as, *e.g.*, dot blots, Northern blots, *in situ* hybridization, ELISA, immunoprecipitation, enzyme function, as well as phenotypic assays known to those of skill in the art.

The term “nucleic acid” as used herein refers to a polymer containing at least two nucleotides (*i.e.*, deoxyribonucleotides or ribonucleotides) in either single- or double-stranded form and includes DNA and RNA. “Nucleotides” contain a sugar deoxyribose (DNA) or ribose (RNA), a base, and a phosphate group. Nucleotides are linked together through the phosphate groups. “Bases” include purines and pyrimidines, which further include natural compounds adenine, thymine, guanine, cytosine, uracil, inosine, and natural analogs, and synthetic derivatives of purines and pyrimidines, which include, but are not limited to, modifications which place new reactive groups such as, but not limited to, amines, alcohols, thiols, carboxylates, and alkylhalides. Nucleic acids include nucleic acids containing known nucleotide analogs or modified backbone residues or linkages, which are synthetic, naturally occurring, and non-naturally occurring, and which have similar binding properties as the reference nucleic acid. Examples of such analogs and/or modified residues include, without limitation, phosphorothioates, phosphoramidates, methyl phosphonates, chiral-methyl phosphonates, 2'-O-methyl ribonucleotides, and peptide-nucleic acids (PNAs). Additionally, nucleic acids can include one or more UNA moieties.

The term “nucleic acid” includes any oligonucleotide or polynucleotide, with fragments containing up to 60 nucleotides generally termed oligonucleotides, and longer fragments termed polynucleotides. A deoxyribooligonucleotide consists of a 5-carbon sugar called deoxyribose joined covalently to phosphate at the 5' and 3' carbons of this sugar to form an alternating, unbranched polymer. DNA may be in the form of, *e.g.*, antisense molecules, plasmid DNA, pre-condensed DNA, a PCR product, vectors, expression cassettes, chimeric sequences,

chromosomal DNA, or derivatives and combinations of these groups. A ribooligonucleotide consists of a similar repeating structure where the 5-carbon sugar is ribose. RNA may be in the form, for example, of small interfering RNA (siRNA), Dicer-substrate dsRNA, small hairpin RNA (shRNA), asymmetrical interfering RNA (aiRNA), microRNA (miRNA), mRNA, tRNA, rRNA, viral RNA (vRNA), and combinations thereof. Accordingly, the terms “polynucleotide” and “oligonucleotide” refer to a polymer or oligomer of nucleotide or nucleoside monomers consisting of naturally-occurring bases, sugars and intersugar (backbone) linkages. The terms “polynucleotide” and “oligonucleotide” also include polymers or oligomers comprising non-naturally occurring monomers, or portions thereof, which function similarly. Such modified or substituted oligonucleotides are often preferred over native forms because of properties such as, for example, enhanced cellular uptake, reduced immunogenicity, and increased stability in the presence of nucleases.

Unless otherwise indicated, a particular nucleic acid sequence also implicitly encompasses conservatively modified variants thereof (*e.g.*, degenerate codon substitutions), alleles, orthologs, SNPs, and complementary sequences as well as the sequence explicitly indicated. Specifically, degenerate codon substitutions may be achieved by generating sequences in which the third position of one or more selected (or all) codons is substituted with mixed-base and/or deoxyinosine residues (Batzer *et al.*, *Nucleic Acid Res.*, 19:5081 (1991); Ohtsuka *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.*, 260:2605-2608 (1985); Rossolini *et al.*, *Mol. Cell. Probes*, 8:91-98 (1994)).

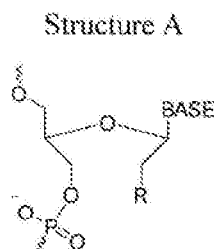
An “isolated” or “purified” DNA molecule or RNA molecule is a DNA molecule or RNA molecule that exists apart from its native environment. An isolated DNA molecule or RNA molecule may exist in a purified form or may exist in a non-native environment such as, for example, a transgenic host cell. For example, an “isolated” or “purified” nucleic acid molecule or biologically active portion thereof, is substantially free of other cellular material, or culture medium when produced by recombinant techniques, or substantially free of chemical precursors or other chemicals when chemically synthesized. In one embodiment, an “isolated” nucleic acid is free of sequences that naturally flank the nucleic acid (*i.e.*, sequences located at the 5' and 3' ends of the nucleic acid) in the genomic DNA of the organism from which the nucleic acid is derived. For example, in various embodiments, the isolated nucleic acid molecule can contain less than about 5 kb, 4 kb, 3 kb, 2 kb, 1 kb, 0.5 kb, or 0.1 kb of nucleotide

sequences that naturally flank the nucleic acid molecule in genomic DNA of the cell from which the nucleic acid is derived.

The term “gene” refers to a nucleic acid (*e.g.*, DNA or RNA) sequence that comprises partial length or entire length coding sequences necessary for the production of a polypeptide or precursor polypeptide.

“Gene product,” as used herein, refers to a product of a gene such as an RNA transcript or a polypeptide.

The term “unlocked nucleobase analogue” (abbreviated as “UNA”) refers to an acyclic nucleobase in which the C2' and C3' atoms of the ribose ring are not covalently linked. The term “unlocked nucleobase analogue” includes nucleobase analogues having the following structure identified as Structure A:



wherein R is hydroxyl, and Base is any natural or unnatural base such as, for example, adenine (A), cytosine (C), guanine (G) and thymine (T). UNA include the molecules identified as acyclic 2'-3'-seco-nucleotide monomers in U.S. patent serial number 8,314,227.

The term “lipid” refers to a group of organic compounds that include, but are not limited to, esters of fatty acids and are characterized by being insoluble in water, but soluble in many organic solvents. They are usually divided into at least three classes: (1) “simple lipids,” which include fats and oils as well as waxes; (2) “compound lipids,” which include phospholipids and glycolipids; and (3) “derived lipids” such as steroids.

The term “lipid particle” includes a lipid formulation that can be used to deliver a therapeutic nucleic acid (*e.g.*, siRNA) to a target site of interest (*e.g.*, cell, tissue, organ, and the like). In preferred embodiments, the lipid particle is typically formed from a cationic lipid, a non-cationic lipid, and optionally a conjugated lipid that prevents aggregation of the particle. A lipid particle that includes a nucleic acid molecule (*e.g.*, siRNA molecule) is referred to as a

nucleic acid-lipid particle. Typically, the nucleic acid is fully encapsulated within the lipid particle, thereby protecting the nucleic acid from enzymatic degradation.

In certain instances, nucleic acid-lipid particles are extremely useful for systemic applications, as they can exhibit extended circulation lifetimes following intravenous (i.v.) injection, they can accumulate at distal sites (*e.g.*, sites physically separated from the administration site), and they can mediate silencing of target gene expression at these distal sites. The nucleic acid may be complexed with a condensing agent and encapsulated within a lipid particle as set forth in PCT Publication No. WO 00/03683, the disclosure of which is herein incorporated by reference in its entirety for all purposes.

The lipid particles typically have a mean diameter of from about 30 nm to about 150 nm, from about 40 nm to about 150 nm, from about 50 nm to about 150 nm, from about 60 nm to about 130 nm, from about 70 nm to about 110 nm, from about 70 nm to about 100 nm, from about 80 nm to about 100 nm, from about 90 nm to about 100 nm, from about 70 to about 90 nm, from about 80 nm to about 90 nm, from about 70 nm to about 80 nm, or about 30 nm, 35 nm, 40 nm, 45 nm, 50 nm, 55 nm, 60 nm, 65 nm, 70 nm, 75 nm, 80 nm, 85 nm, 90 nm, 95 nm, 100 nm, 105 nm, 110 nm, 115 nm, 120 nm, 125 nm, 130 nm, 135 nm, 140 nm, 145 nm, or 150 nm, and are substantially non-toxic. In addition, nucleic acids, when present in the lipid particles, are resistant in aqueous solution to degradation with a nuclease. Nucleic acid-lipid particles and their method of preparation are disclosed in, *e.g.*, U.S. Patent Publication Nos. 20040142025 and 20070042031, the disclosures of which are herein incorporated by reference in their entirety for all purposes.

As used herein, "lipid encapsulated" can refer to a lipid particle that provides a therapeutic nucleic acid such as a siRNA, with full encapsulation, partial encapsulation, or both. In a preferred embodiment, the nucleic acid (*e.g.*, siRNA) is fully encapsulated in the lipid particle (*e.g.*, to form a nucleic acid-lipid particle).

The term "lipid conjugate" refers to a conjugated lipid that inhibits aggregation of lipid particles. Such lipid conjugates include, but are not limited to, PEG-lipid conjugates such as, *e.g.*, PEG coupled to dialkylxypropyls (*e.g.*, PEG-DAA conjugates), PEG coupled to diacylglycerols (*e.g.*, PEG-DAG conjugates), PEG coupled to cholesterol, PEG coupled to phosphatidylethanolamines, and PEG conjugated to ceramides (*see, e.g.*, U.S. Patent No.

5,885,613), cationic PEG lipids, polyoxazoline (POZ)-lipid conjugates (*e.g.*, POZ-DAA conjugates), polyamide oligomers (*e.g.*, ATTA-lipid conjugates), and mixtures thereof. Additional examples of POZ-lipid conjugates are described in PCT Publication No. WO 2010/006282. PEG or POZ can be conjugated directly to the lipid or may be linked to the lipid via a linker moiety. Any linker moiety suitable for coupling the PEG or the POZ to a lipid can be used including, *e.g.*, non-ester containing linker moieties and ester-containing linker moieties. In certain preferred embodiments, non-ester containing linker moieties, such as amides or carbamates, are used.

The term "amphipathic lipid" refers, in part, to any suitable material wherein the hydrophobic portion of the lipid material orients into a hydrophobic phase, while the hydrophilic portion orients toward the aqueous phase. Hydrophilic characteristics derive from the presence of polar or charged groups such as carbohydrates, phosphate, carboxylic, sulfato, amino, sulfhydryl, nitro, hydroxyl, and other like groups. Hydrophobicity can be conferred by the inclusion of apolar groups that include, but are not limited to, long-chain saturated and unsaturated aliphatic hydrocarbon groups and such groups substituted by one or more aromatic, cycloaliphatic, or heterocyclic group(s). Examples of amphipathic compounds include, but are not limited to, phospholipids, aminolipids, and sphingolipids.

Representative examples of phospholipids include, but are not limited to, phosphatidylcholine, phosphatidylethanolamine, phosphatidylserine, phosphatidylinositol, phosphatidic acid, palmitoyloleoyl phosphatidylcholine, lysophosphatidylcholine, lysophosphatidylethanolamine, dipalmitoylphosphatidylcholine, dioleoylphosphatidylcholine, distearoylphosphatidylcholine, and dilinoleoylphosphatidylcholine. Other compounds lacking in phosphorus, such as sphingolipid, glycosphingolipid families, diacylglycerols, and β -acyloxyacids, are also within the group designated as amphipathic lipids. Additionally, the amphipathic lipids described above can be mixed with other lipids including triglycerides and sterols.

The term "neutral lipid" refers to any of a number of lipid species that exist either in an uncharged or neutral zwitterionic form at a selected pH. At physiological pH, such lipids include, for example, diacylphosphatidylcholine, diacylphosphatidylethanolamine, ceramide, sphingomyelin, cephalin, cholesterol, cerebroside, and diacylglycerols.

The term “non-cationic lipid” refers to any amphipathic lipid as well as any other neutral lipid or anionic lipid.

The term “anionic lipid” refers to any lipid that is negatively charged at physiological pH. These lipids include, but are not limited to, phosphatidylglycerols, cardiolipins, diacylphosphatidylserines, diacylphosphatidic acids, N-dodecanoyl phosphatidylethanolamines, N-succinyl phosphatidylethanolamines, N-glutarylphosphatidylethanolamines, lysylphosphatidylglycerols, palmitoyloleyolphosphatidylglycerol (POPG), and other anionic modifying groups joined to neutral lipids.

The term “hydrophobic lipid” refers to compounds having apolar groups that include, but are not limited to, long-chain saturated and unsaturated aliphatic hydrocarbon groups and such groups optionally substituted by one or more aromatic, cycloaliphatic, or heterocyclic group(s). Suitable examples include, but are not limited to, diacylglycerol, dialkylglycerol, N,N-dialkylamino, 1,2-diacyloxy-3-aminopropane, and 1,2-dialkyl-3-aminopropane.

The terms “cationic lipid” and “amino lipid” are used interchangeably herein to include those lipids and salts thereof having one, two, three, or more fatty acid or fatty alkyl chains and a pH-titratable amino head group (*e.g.*, an alkylamino or dialkylamino head group). The cationic lipid is typically protonated (*i.e.*, positively charged) at a pH below the pK_a of the cationic lipid and is substantially neutral at a pH above the pK_a . The cationic lipids may also be termed titratable cationic lipids. In some embodiments, the cationic lipids comprise: a protonatable tertiary amine (*e.g.*, pH-titratable) head group; C_{18} alkyl chains, wherein each alkyl chain independently has 0 to 3 (*e.g.*, 0, 1, 2, or 3) double bonds; and ether, ester, or ketal linkages between the head group and alkyl chains. Such cationic lipids include, but are not limited to, DSDMA, DODMA, DLinDMA, DLenDMA, γ -DLenDMA, DLin-K-DMA, DLin-K-C2-DMA (also known as DLin-C2K-DMA, XTC2, and C2K), DLin-K-C3-DMA, DLin-K-C4-DMA, DLen-C2K-DMA, γ -DLen-C2K-DMA, DLin-M-C2-DMA (also known as MC2), and DLin-M-C3-DMA (also known as MC3).

The term “salts” includes any anionic and cationic complex, such as the complex formed between a cationic lipid and one or more anions. Non-limiting examples of anions include inorganic and organic anions, *e.g.*, hydride, fluoride, chloride, bromide, iodide, oxalate (*e.g.*, hemioxalate), phosphate, phosphonate, hydrogen phosphate, dihydrogen phosphate, oxide,

carbonate, bicarbonate, nitrate, nitrite, nitride, bisulfite, sulfide, sulfite, bisulfate, sulfate, thiosulfate, hydrogen sulfate, borate, formate, acetate, benzoate, citrate, tartrate, lactate, acrylate, polyacrylate, fumarate, maleate, itaconate, glycolate, gluconate, malate, mandelate, tiglate, ascorbate, salicylate, polymethacrylate, perchlorate, chlorate, chlorite, hypochlorite, bromate, hypobromite, iodate, an alkylsulfonate, an arylsulfonate, arsenate, arsenite, chromate, dichromate, cyanide, cyanate, thiocyanate, hydroxide, peroxide, permanganate, and mixtures thereof. In particular embodiments, the salts of the cationic lipids disclosed herein are crystalline salts.

The term "alkyl" includes a straight chain or branched, noncyclic or cyclic, saturated aliphatic hydrocarbon containing from 1 to 24 carbon atoms. Representative saturated straight chain alkyls include, but are not limited to, methyl, ethyl, *n*-propyl, *n*-butyl, *n*-pentyl, *n*-hexyl, and the like, while saturated branched alkyls include, without limitation, isopropyl, *sec*-butyl, isobutyl, *tert*-butyl, isopentyl, and the like. Representative saturated cyclic alkyls include, but are not limited to, cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, and the like, while unsaturated cyclic alkyls include, without limitation, cyclopentenyl, cyclohexenyl, and the like.

The term "alkenyl" includes an alkyl, as defined above, containing at least one double bond between adjacent carbon atoms. Alkenyls include both *cis* and *trans* isomers. Representative straight chain and branched alkenyls include, but are not limited to, ethylenyl, propylenyl, 1-butenyl, 2-butenyl, isobutylenyl, 1-pentenyl, 2-pentenyl, 3-methyl-1-butenyl, 2-methyl-2-butenyl, 2,3-dimethyl-2-butenyl, and the like.

The term "alkynyl" includes any alkyl or alkenyl, as defined above, which additionally contains at least one triple bond between adjacent carbons. Representative straight chain and branched alkynyls include, without limitation, acetylenyl, propynyl, 1-butylnyl, 2-butylnyl, 1-pentylnyl, 2-pentylnyl, 3-methyl-1 butynyl, and the like.

The term "acyl" includes any alkyl, alkenyl, or alkynyl wherein the carbon at the point of attachment is substituted with an oxo group, as defined below. The following are non-limiting examples of acyl groups: -C(=O)alkyl, -C(=O)alkenyl, and -C(=O)alkynyl.

The term "heterocycle" includes a 5- to 7-membered monocyclic, or 7- to 10-membered bicyclic, heterocyclic ring which is either saturated, unsaturated, or aromatic, and which contains from 1 or 2 heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen and

sulfur, and wherein the nitrogen and sulfur heteroatoms may be optionally oxidized, and the nitrogen heteroatom may be optionally quaternized, including bicyclic rings in which any of the above heterocycles are fused to a benzene ring. The heterocycle may be attached via any heteroatom or carbon atom. Heterocycles include, but are not limited to, heteroaryls as defined below, as well as morpholinyl, pyrrolidinonyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperizynyl, hydantoinyl, valerolactamyl, oxiranyl, oxetanyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, tetrahydropyranyl, tetrahydropyridinyl, tetrahydroprimidinyl, tetrahydrothiophenyl, tetrahydrothiopyranyl, tetrahydropyrimidinyl, tetrahydrothiophenyl, tetrahydrothiopyranyl, and the like.

The terms “optionally substituted alkyl”, “optionally substituted alkenyl”, “optionally substituted alkynyl”, “optionally substituted acyl”, and “optionally substituted heterocycle” mean that, when substituted, at least one hydrogen atom is replaced with a substituent. In the case of an oxo substituent (=O), two hydrogen atoms are replaced. In this regard, substituents include, but are not limited to, oxo, halogen, heterocycle, -CN, -OR^x, -NR^xR^y, -NR^xC(=O)R^y, -NR^xSO₂R^y, -C(=O)R^x, -C(=O)OR^x, -C(=O)NR^xR^y, -SO_nR^x, and -SO_nNR^xR^y, wherein n is 0, 1, or 2, R^x and R^y are the same or different and are independently hydrogen, alkyl, or heterocycle, and each of the alkyl and heterocycle substituents may be further substituted with one or more of oxo, halogen, -OH, -CN, alkyl, -OR^x, heterocycle, -NR^xR^y, -NR^xC(=O)R^y, -NR^xSO₂R^y, -C(=O)R^x, -C(=O)OR^x, -C(=O)NR^xR^y, -SO_nR^x, and -SO_nNR^xR^y. The term “optionally substituted,” when used before a list of substituents, means that each of the substituents in the list may be optionally substituted as described herein.

The term “halogen” includes fluoro, chloro, bromo, and iodo.

The term “fusogenic” refers to the ability of a lipid particle to fuse with the membranes of a cell. The membranes can be either the plasma membrane or membranes surrounding organelles, *e.g.*, endosome, nucleus, *etc.*

As used herein, the term “aqueous solution” refers to a composition comprising in whole, or in part, water.

As used herein, the term “organic lipid solution” refers to a composition comprising in whole, or in part, an organic solvent having a lipid.

The term “electron dense core”, when used to describe a lipid particle, refers to the dark appearance of the interior portion of a lipid particle when visualized using cryo

transmission electron microscopy ("cryoTEM"). Some lipid particles have an electron dense core and lack a lipid bilayer structure. Some lipid particles have an electron dense core, lack a lipid bilayer structure, and have an inverse Hexagonal or Cubic phase structure. While not wishing to be bound by theory, it is thought that the non-bilayer lipid packing provides a 3-
5 dimensional network of lipid cylinders with water and nucleic acid on the inside, i.e., essentially a lipid droplet interpenetrated with aqueous channels containing the nucleic acid.

"Distal site," as used herein, refers to a physically separated site, which is not limited to an adjacent capillary bed, but includes sites broadly distributed throughout an organism.

"Serum-stable" in relation to nucleic acid-lipid particles means that the particle is not
10 significantly degraded after exposure to a serum or nuclease assay that would significantly degrade free DNA or RNA. Suitable assays include, for example, a standard serum assay, a DNase assay, or an RNase assay.

"Systemic delivery," as used herein, refers to delivery of lipid particles that leads to a broad biodistribution of an active agent such as a siRNA within an organism. Some techniques
15 of administration can lead to the systemic delivery of certain agents, but not others. Systemic delivery means that a useful, preferably therapeutic, amount of an agent is exposed to most parts of the body. To obtain broad biodistribution generally requires a blood lifetime such that the agent is not rapidly degraded or cleared (such as by first pass organs (liver, lung, *etc.*) or by rapid, nonspecific cell binding) before reaching a disease site distal to the site of administration.
20 Systemic delivery of lipid particles can be by any means known in the art including, for example, intravenous, subcutaneous, and intraperitoneal. In a preferred embodiment, systemic delivery of lipid particles is by intravenous delivery.

"Local delivery," as used herein, refers to delivery of an active agent such as a siRNA directly to a target site within an organism. For example, an agent can be locally delivered by
25 direct injection into a disease site, other target site, or a target organ such as the liver, heart, pancreas, kidney, and the like.

The term "virus particle load", as used herein, refers to a measure of the number of virus particles (e.g., HBV and/or HDV) present in a bodily fluid, such as blood. For example, particle load may be expressed as the number of virus particles per milliliter of, e.g., blood.

30 Particle load testing may be performed using nucleic acid amplification based tests, as well as

non-nucleic acid-based tests (*see, e.g.*, Puren et al., The Journal of Infectious Diseases, 201:S27-36 (2010)).

The term "mammal" refers to any mammalian species such as a human, mouse, rat, dog, cat, hamster, guinea pig, rabbit, livestock, and the like.

5

Table A

Name	Duplex Sequences	IC 50 (nM)
1m	5' <u>A</u> g G u A U g u U G C C C g U u U G U <u>U</u> <u>U</u> 3' (SEQ ID NO:1) 3' <u>U</u> <u>U</u> U C C A u A C A A C G G g C A A A C A 5' (SEQ ID NO:2)	1.43
2m	5' <u>G</u> C u c A g U U U A C U A G U G C c A U <u>U</u> 3' (SEQ ID NO:3) 3' U U C g A G U C A A A u G A U C A C G G U 5' (SEQ ID NO:4)	0.37
3m	5' <u>C</u> C G U g u G C A C U u C G C u u C A U <u>U</u> 3' (SEQ ID NO:5) 3' <u>U</u> <u>U</u> G g C A C A C g U G A A G C G A A G U 5' (SEQ ID NO:6)	0.06
4m	5' <u>G</u> C u c A g U U U A C U A G U G C c A U <u>U</u> 3' (SEQ ID NO:7) 3' <u>U</u> <u>U</u> C g A G U C A A A u G A U C A C G G U 5' (SEQ ID NO:8)	0.31
5m	5' <u>C</u> C G U g u G C A C U u C G C u U C A U <u>U</u> 3' (SEQ ID NO:9) 3' U U G g C A C A C g U G A A G C G A A G U 5' (SEQ ID NO:10)	0.06
6m	5' <u>C</u> u g g C U C A G U U U A C u A g U G U <u>U</u> 3' (SEQ ID NO:11) 3' U U G A C C g A g U C A A A U g A U C A C 5' (SEQ ID NO:12)	0.05
7m	5' <u>C</u> C G U g u G C A C U u C G C u U C A U <u>U</u> 3' (SEQ ID NO:13) 3' <u>U</u> <u>U</u> G g C A C A C g U G A A G C G A A G U 5' (SEQ ID NO:14)	0.06
8m	5' <u>G</u> C u C A g U U U A C u A g U G C C A U <u>U</u> 3' (SEQ ID NO:15) 3' <u>U</u> <u>U</u> C G A G u C A A A U G A U C A C G G U 5' (SEQ ID NO:16)	0.24
9m	5' <u>A</u> g G u A U G u U G C C C g U u U G U <u>U</u> 3' (SEQ ID NO:17) 3' <u>U</u> <u>U</u> u C C A u A C A A C G G g C A A A C A 5' (SEQ ID NO:18)	0.13
10m	5' <u>G</u> C C g A u C C A U A C u g C g g A A U <u>U</u> 3' (SEQ ID NO:19) 3' <u>U</u> <u>U</u> C g G C U A g G U A U g A C G C C U U 5' (SEQ ID NO:20)	0.34

11m	5' <u>G</u> C C g A u C C A U A C u g C g g A A U <u>U</u> 3' (SEQ ID NO:21) 3' U U C g G C U A g G U A U g A C G C C U U 5' (SEQ ID NO:22)	0.31
12m	5' <u>G</u> C C g A u C C A U A C u g C G g A A U <u>U</u> 3' (SEQ ID NO:23) 3' U U C g G C U A g G U A U g A C G C C U U 5' (SEQ ID NO:24)	0.16
13m	5' <u>G</u> C C g A u C C A U A C u g C G g A A <u>U</u> <u>U</u> 3' (SEQ ID NO:25) 3' <u>U</u> <u>U</u> C g G C U A g G U A U g A C G C C U U 5' (SEQ ID NO:26)	0.2
14m	5' <u>G</u> C u C A g U U U A C u A g U G C C A U <u>U</u> 3' (SEQ ID NO:27) 3' U U C G A G u C A A A U G A U C A C G G U 5' (SEQ ID NO:28)	0.16
15m	5' <u>C</u> u g G C u C A G U U u A C U A G U G <u>U</u> <u>U</u> 3' (SEQ ID NO:29) 3' <u>U</u> <u>U</u> G A C C g A G U C A A A U G A U C A C 5' (SEQ ID NO:30)	0.17
lower case = 2'O-methyl modification Underline = UNA moiety		

The oligonucleotides (such as the sense and antisense RNA strands set forth in Table B) specifically hybridize to or is complementary to a target polynucleotide sequence. The terms "specifically hybridizable" and "complementary" as used herein indicate a sufficient degree of complementarity such that stable and specific binding occurs between the DNA or RNA target and the oligonucleotide. It is understood that an oligonucleotide need not be 100% complementary to its target nucleic acid sequence to be specifically hybridizable. In preferred embodiments, an oligonucleotide is specifically hybridizable when binding of the oligonucleotide to the target sequence interferes with the normal function of the target sequence to cause a loss of utility or expression therefrom, and there is a sufficient degree of complementarity to avoid non-specific binding of the oligonucleotide to non-target sequences under conditions in which specific binding is desired, *i.e.*, under physiological conditions in the case of *in vivo* assays or therapeutic treatment, or, in the case of *in vitro* assays, under conditions in which the assays are conducted. Thus, the oligonucleotide may include 1, 2, 3, or more base substitutions as compared to the region of a gene or mRNA sequence that it is targeting or to which it specifically hybridizes.

Table B.

Name	Sense Sequence (5'-3')	Antisense Sequence (5' - 3')
1m	<u>Ag</u> G <u>u</u> A <u>G</u> uUGCCCgUuUGUUU (SEQ ID NO:1)	ACAAACgGGCAAC <u>u</u> ACCUUU (SEQ ID NO:2)
2m	<u>G</u> C <u>u</u> C <u>Ag</u> UUUACUAGUGCcAUU (SEQ ID NO:3)	UGGCACUAG <u>u</u> AAACUGAgCUU (SEQ ID NO:4)
3m	<u>C</u> CGU <u>g</u> GCACUuCGCuCAUU (SEQ ID NO:5)	UGAAGCGAAGUgCACACgGUU (SEQ ID NO:6)
4m	<u>G</u> C <u>u</u> C <u>Ag</u> UUUACUAGUGCcAUU (SEQ ID NO:7)	UGGCACUAG <u>u</u> AAACUGAgCUU (SEQ ID NO:8)
5m	<u>C</u> CGU <u>g</u> GCACUuCGCuUCAUU (SEQ ID NO:9)	UGAAGCGAAGUgCACACgGUU (SEQ ID NO:10)
6m	<u>C</u> ugGCUCAGUUUACuAgUGUU (SEQ ID NO:11)	CACUAgUAAACUgAgCCAGUU (SEQ ID NO:12)
7m	<u>C</u> CGU <u>g</u> GCACUuCGCuUCAUU (SEQ ID NO:13)	UGAAGCGAAGUgCACACgGUU (SEQ ID NO:14)
8m	<u>G</u> C <u>u</u> C <u>Ag</u> UUUACuAgUGCCA <u>U</u> U (SEQ ID NO:15)	UGGCACUAGUAAACuGAGC <u>U</u> U (SEQ ID NO:16)
9m	<u>Ag</u> G <u>u</u> A <u>G</u> uUGCCCgUuUGUUU (SEQ ID NO:17)	ACAAACgGGCAAC <u>u</u> ACCU <u>U</u> U (SEQ ID NO:18)
10m	<u>G</u> CCgAuCCAUA <u>C</u> ugCggAAUU (SEQ ID NO:19)	UUCCGCAGUAUGgAUCGgCUU (SEQ ID NO:20)
11m	<u>G</u> CCgAuCCAUA <u>C</u> ugCggAAUU (SEQ ID NO:21)	UUCCGCAGUAUGgAUCGgCUU (SEQ ID NO:22)
12m	<u>G</u> CCgAuCCAUA <u>C</u> ugCGgAAUU (SEQ ID NO:23)	UUCCGCAGUAUGgAUCGgCUU (SEQ ID NO:24)
13m	<u>G</u> CCgAuCCAUA <u>C</u> ugCGgAAUU (SEQ ID NO:25)	UUCCGCAGUAUGgAUCGgCUU (SEQ ID NO:26)
14m	<u>G</u> C <u>u</u> C <u>Ag</u> UUUACuAgUGCCA <u>U</u> U (SEQ ID NO:27)	UGGCACUAGUAAACuGAGC <u>U</u> U (SEQ ID NO:28)
15m	<u>C</u> ugGCuCAGUUuACUAGUG <u>U</u> U (SEQ ID NO:29)	CACUAGUAAACUGAgCCAG <u>U</u> U (SEQ ID NO:30)
lower case = 2'O-methyl modification		
Underline = UNA moiety		

Generating siRNA Molecules

siRNA can be provided in several forms including, *e.g.*, as one or more isolated small-interfering RNA (siRNA) duplexes, as longer double-stranded RNA (dsRNA), or as siRNA or dsRNA transcribed from a transcriptional cassette in a DNA plasmid. In some embodiments, siRNA may be produced enzymatically or by partial/total organic synthesis, and modified ribonucleotides can be introduced by *in vitro* enzymatic or organic synthesis. In certain instances, each strand is prepared chemically. Methods of synthesizing RNA molecules are known in the art, *e.g.*, the chemical synthesis methods as described in Verma and Eckstein (1998) or as described herein.

Methods for isolating RNA, synthesizing RNA, hybridizing nucleic acids, making and screening cDNA libraries, and performing PCR are well known in the art (*see, e.g.,* Gubler and Hoffman, *Gene*, 25:263-269 (1983); Sambrook *et al., supra*; Ausubel *et al., supra*), as are PCR methods (*see, U.S. Patent Nos. 4,683,195 and 4,683,202; PCR Protocols: A Guide to Methods and Applications* (Innis *et al., eds*, 1990)). Expression libraries are also well known to those of skill in the art. Additional basic texts disclosing the general methods include Sambrook *et al., Molecular Cloning, A Laboratory Manual* (2nd ed. 1989); Kriegler, *Gene Transfer and Expression: A Laboratory Manual* (1990); and *Current Protocols in Molecular Biology* (Ausubel *et al., eds., 1994*). The disclosures of these references are herein incorporated by reference in their entirety for all purposes.

Typically, siRNA are chemically synthesized. The oligonucleotides that comprise the siRNA molecules can be synthesized using any of a variety of techniques known in the art, such as those described in Usman *et al., J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 109:7845 (1987); Searinge *et al., Nucl. Acids Res.*, 18:5433 (1990); Wincott *et al., Nucl. Acids Res.*, 23:2677-2684 (1995); and Wincott *et al., Methods Mol. Bio.*, 74:59 (1997). The synthesis of oligonucleotides makes use of common nucleic acid protecting and coupling groups, such as dimethoxytrityl at the 5'-end and phosphoramidites at the 3'-end. As a non-limiting example, small scale syntheses can be conducted on an Applied Biosystems synthesizer using a 0.2 μ mol scale protocol. Alternatively, syntheses at the 0.2 μ mol scale can be performed on a 96-well plate synthesizer from Protogene (Palo Alto, CA). However, a larger or smaller scale of synthesis is also within the scope. Suitable reagents for oligonucleotide synthesis, methods for RNA deprotection, and methods for RNA purification are known to those of skill in the art.

siRNA molecules can be assembled from two distinct oligonucleotides, wherein one oligonucleotide comprises the sense strand and the other comprises the antisense strand of the siRNA. For example, each strand can be synthesized separately and joined together by hybridization or ligation following synthesis and/or deprotection.

Carrier Systems Containing Therapeutic Nucleic Acids

Lipid Particles

The lipid particles can comprise one or more siRNA (*e.g.,* an siRNA molecules described in Table A), a cationic lipid, a non-cationic lipid, and a conjugated lipid that inhibits

aggregation of particles. In some embodiments, the siRNA molecule is fully encapsulated within the lipid portion of the lipid particle such that the siRNA molecule in the lipid particle is resistant in aqueous solution to nuclease degradation. In other embodiments, the lipid particles described herein are substantially non-toxic to mammals such as humans. The lipid particles typically have a mean diameter of from about 30 nm to about 150 nm, from about 40 nm to about 150 nm, from about 50 nm to about 150 nm, from about 60 nm to about 130 nm, from about 70 nm to about 110 nm, or from about 70 to about 90 nm. In certain embodiments, the lipid particles have a median diameter of from about 30 nm to about 150 nm. The lipid particles also typically have a lipid:nucleic acid ratio (*e.g.*, a lipid:siRNA ratio) (mass/mass ratio) of from about 1:1 to about 100:1, from about 1:1 to about 50:1, from about 2:1 to about 25:1, from about 3:1 to about 20:1, from about 5:1 to about 15:1, or from about 5:1 to about 10:1. In certain embodiments, the nucleic acid-lipid particle has a lipid:siRNA mass ratio of from about 5:1 to about 15:1.

The lipid particles include serum-stable nucleic acid-lipid particles which comprise one or more siRNA molecules (*e.g.*, a siRNA molecule as described in Table A), a cationic lipid (*e.g.*, one or more cationic lipids of Formula I-III or salts thereof as set forth herein), a non-cationic lipid (*e.g.*, mixtures of one or more phospholipids and cholesterol), and a conjugated lipid that inhibits aggregation of the particles (*e.g.*, one or more PEG-lipid conjugates). The lipid particle may comprise at least 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, or more siRNA molecules (*e.g.*, siRNA molecules described in Table A) that target one or more of the genes described herein. Nucleic acid-lipid particles and their method of preparation are described in, *e.g.*, U.S. Patent Nos. 5,753,613; 5,785,992; 5,705,385; 5,976,567; 5,981,501; 6,110,745; and 6,320,017; and PCT Publication No. WO 96/40964, the disclosures of which are each herein incorporated by reference in their entirety for all purposes.

In the nucleic acid-lipid particles, the one or more siRNA molecules (*e.g.*, an siRNA molecule as described in Table A) may be fully encapsulated within the lipid portion of the particle, thereby protecting the siRNA from nuclease degradation. In certain instances, the siRNA in the nucleic acid-lipid particle is not substantially degraded after exposure of the particle to a nuclease at 37°C for at least about 20, 30, 45, or 60 minutes. In certain other instances, the siRNA in the nucleic acid-lipid particle is not substantially degraded after

incubation of the particle in serum at 37°C for at least about 30, 45, or 60 minutes or at least about 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 12, 14, 16, 18, 20, 22, 24, 26, 28, 30, 32, 34, or 36 hours. In other embodiments, the siRNA is complexed with the lipid portion of the particle. One of the benefits of the formulations is that the nucleic acid-lipid particle compositions are substantially non-toxic to mammals such as humans.

The term “fully encapsulated” indicates that the siRNA (e.g., a siRNA molecule as described in Table A) in the nucleic acid-lipid particle is not significantly degraded after exposure to serum or a nuclease assay that would significantly degrade free DNA or RNA. In a fully encapsulated system, preferably less than about 25% of the siRNA in the particle is degraded in a treatment that would normally degrade 100% of free siRNA, more preferably less than about 10%, and most preferably less than about 5% of the siRNA in the particle is degraded. “Fully encapsulated” also indicates that the nucleic acid-lipid particles are serum-stable, that is, that they do not rapidly decompose into their component parts upon *in vivo* administration.

In the context of nucleic acids, full encapsulation may be determined by performing a membrane-impermeable fluorescent dye exclusion assay, which uses a dye that has enhanced fluorescence when associated with nucleic acid. Specific dyes such as OliGreen® and RiboGreen® (Invitrogen Corp.; Carlsbad, CA) are available for the quantitative determination of plasmid DNA, single-stranded deoxyribonucleotides, and/or single- or double-stranded ribonucleotides. Encapsulation is determined by adding the dye to a liposomal formulation, measuring the resulting fluorescence, and comparing it to the fluorescence observed upon addition of a small amount of nonionic detergent. Detergent-mediated disruption of the liposomal bilayer releases the encapsulated nucleic acid, allowing it to interact with the membrane-impermeable dye. Nucleic acid encapsulation may be calculated as $E = (I_0 - I)/I_0$, where I and I_0 refer to the fluorescence intensities before and after the addition of detergent (*see* Wheeler *et al.*, *Gene Ther.*, 6:271-281 (1999)).

In some instances, the nucleic acid-lipid particle composition comprises a siRNA molecule that is fully encapsulated within the lipid portion of the particles, such that from about 30% to about 100%, from about 40% to about 100%, from about 50% to about 100%, from about 60% to about 100%, from about 70% to about 100%, from about 80% to about 100%,

from about 90% to about 100%, from about 30% to about 95%, from about 40% to about 95%, from about 50% to about 95%, from about 60% to about 95%, from about 70% to about 95%, from about 80% to about 95%, from about 85% to about 95%, from about 90% to about 95%, from about 30% to about 90%, from about 40% to about 90%, from about 50% to about 90%,
5 from about 60% to about 90%, from about 70% to about 90%, from about 80% to about 90%, or at least about 30%, 35%, 40%, 45%, 50%, 55%, 60%, 65%, 70%, 75%, 80%, 85%, 90%, 91%, 92%, 93%, 94%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98%, or 99% (or any fraction thereof or range therein) of the particles have the siRNA encapsulated therein.

In other instances, the nucleic acid-lipid particle composition comprises siRNA that is
10 fully encapsulated within the lipid portion of the particles, such that from about 30% to about 100%, from about 40% to about 100%, from about 50% to about 100%, from about 60% to about 100%, from about 70% to about 100%, from about 80% to about 100%, from about 90% to about 100%, from about 30% to about 95%, from about 40% to about 95%, from about 50% to about 95%, from about 60% to about 95%, from about 70% to about 95%, from about 80% to about 95%, from about 85% to about 95%, from about 90% to about 95%, from about 30% to about 90%, from about 40% to about 90%, from about 50% to about 90%, from about 60% to about 90%, from about 70% to about 90%, from about 80% to about 90%, or at least about 30%, 35%, 40%, 45%, 50%, 55%, 60%, 65%, 70%, 75%, 80%, 85%, 90%, 91%, 92%, 93%, 94%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98%, or 99% (or any fraction thereof or range therein) of the input siRNA is
15 encapsulated in the particles.
20

Depending on the intended use of the lipid particles, the proportions of the components can be varied and the delivery efficiency of a particular formulation can be measured using, *e.g.*, an endosomal release parameter (ERP) assay.

Cationic Lipids

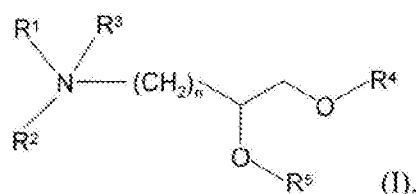
25 Any of a variety of cationic lipids or salts thereof may be used in the lipid particles either alone or in combination with one or more other cationic lipid species or non-cationic lipid species. The cationic lipids include the (R) and/or (S) enantiomers thereof.

In one aspect, the cationic lipid is a dialkyl lipid. For example, dialkyl lipids may include lipids that comprise two saturated or unsaturated alkyl chains, wherein each of the alkyl
30 chains may be substituted or unsubstituted. In certain embodiments, each of the two alkyl chains

comprise at least, e.g., 8 carbon atoms, 10 carbon atoms, 12 carbon atoms, 14 carbon atoms, 16 carbon atoms, 18 carbon atoms, 20 carbon atoms, 22 carbon atoms or 24 carbon atoms.

In one aspect, the cationic lipid is a trialkyl lipid. For example, trialkyl lipids may include lipids that comprise three saturated or unsaturated alkyl chains, wherein each of the alkyl chains may be substituted or unsubstituted. In certain embodiments, each of the three alkyl chains comprise at least, e.g., 8 carbon atoms, 10 carbon atoms, 12 carbon atoms, 14 carbon atoms, 16 carbon atoms, 18 carbon atoms, 20 carbon atoms, 22 carbon atoms or 24 carbon atoms.

In one aspect, cationic lipids of Formula I having the following structure are useful:



or salts thereof, wherein:

R^1 and R^2 are either the same or different and are independently hydrogen (H) or an optionally substituted $\text{C}_1\text{--C}_6$ alkyl, $\text{C}_2\text{--C}_6$ alkenyl, or $\text{C}_2\text{--C}_6$ alkynyl, or R^1 and R^2 may join to form an optionally substituted heterocyclic ring of 4 to 6 carbon atoms and 1 or 2 heteroatoms selected from the group consisting of nitrogen (N), oxygen (O), and mixtures thereof;

R^3 is either absent or is hydrogen (H) or a $\text{C}_1\text{--C}_6$ alkyl to provide a quaternary amine;

R^4 and R^5 are either the same or different and are independently an optionally substituted $\text{C}_{10}\text{--C}_{24}$ alkyl, $\text{C}_{10}\text{--C}_{24}$ alkenyl, $\text{C}_{10}\text{--C}_{24}$ alkynyl, or $\text{C}_{10}\text{--C}_{24}$ acyl, wherein at least one of R^4 and R^5 comprises at least two sites of unsaturation; and

n is 0, 1, 2, 3, or 4.

In some embodiments, R^1 and R^2 are independently an optionally substituted $\text{C}_1\text{--C}_4$ alkyl, $\text{C}_2\text{--C}_4$ alkenyl, or $\text{C}_2\text{--C}_4$ alkynyl. In one preferred embodiment, R^1 and R^2 are both methyl groups. In other preferred embodiments, n is 1 or 2. In other embodiments, R^3 is absent when the pH is above the pK_a of the cationic lipid and R^3 is hydrogen when the pH is below the pK_a of the cationic lipid such that the amino head group is protonated. In an alternative embodiment, R^3 is an optionally substituted $\text{C}_1\text{--C}_4$ alkyl to provide a quaternary amine. In further embodiments, R^4 and R^5 are independently an optionally substituted $\text{C}_{12}\text{--C}_{20}$ or $\text{C}_{14}\text{--C}_{22}$ alkyl,

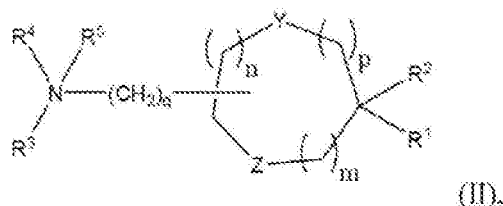
C₁₂-C₂₀ or C₁₄-C₂₂ alkenyl, C₁₂-C₂₀ or C₁₄-C₂₂ alkynyl, or C₁₂-C₂₀ or C₁₄-C₂₂ acyl, wherein at least one of R⁴ and R⁵ comprises at least two sites of unsaturation.

In certain embodiments, R⁴ and R⁵ are independently selected from the group consisting of a dodecadienyl moiety, a tetradecadienyl moiety, a hexadecadienyl moiety, an octadecadienyl moiety, an icosadienyl moiety, a dodecatrienyl moiety, a tetradectrienyl moiety, a hexadecatrienyl moiety, an octadecatrienyl moiety, an icosatrienyl moiety, an arachidonyl moiety, and a docosahexaenoyl moiety, as well as acyl derivatives thereof (*e.g.*, linoleoyl, linolenoyl, γ -linolenoyl, *etc.*). In some instances, one of R⁴ and R⁵ comprises a branched alkyl group (*e.g.*, a phytanyl moiety) or an acyl derivative thereof (*e.g.*, a phytanoyl moiety). In certain instances, the octadecadienyl moiety is a linoleyl moiety. In certain other instances, the octadecatrienyl moiety is a linolenyl moiety or a γ -linolenyl moiety. In certain embodiments, R⁴ and R⁵ are both linoleyl moieties, linolenyl moieties, or γ -linolenyl moieties. In particular embodiments, the cationic lipid of Formula I is 1,2-dilinoleyloxy-N,N-dimethylaminopropane (DLinDMA), 1,2-dilinenyloxy-N,N-dimethylaminopropane (DLenDMA), 1,2-dilinoleyloxy-(N,N-dimethyl)-butyl-4-amine (C2-DLinDMA), 1,2-dilinenyloxy-(N,N-dimethyl)-butyl-4-amine (C2-DLinDAP), or mixtures thereof.

In some embodiments, the cationic lipid of Formula I forms a salt (preferably a crystalline salt) with one or more anions. In one particular embodiment, the cationic lipid of Formula I is the oxalate (*e.g.*, hemioxalate) salt thereof, which is preferably a crystalline salt.

The synthesis of cationic lipids such as DLinDMA and DLenDMA, as well as additional cationic lipids, is described in U.S. Patent Publication No. 20060083780, the disclosure of which is herein incorporated by reference in its entirety for all purposes. The synthesis of cationic lipids such as C2-DLinDMA and C2-DLinDAP, as well as additional cationic lipids, is described in international patent application number WO2011/000106 the disclosure of which is herein incorporated by reference in its entirety for all purposes.

In another aspect, cationic lipids of Formula II having the following structure (or salts thereof) are useful:



wherein R^1 and R^2 are either the same or different and are independently an optionally substituted C_{12} - C_{24} alkyl, C_{12} - C_{24} alkenyl, C_{12} - C_{24} alkynyl, or C_{12} - C_{24} acyl; R^3 and R^4 are either the same or different and are independently an optionally substituted C_1 - C_6 alkyl, C_2 - C_6 alkenyl, or C_2 - C_6 alkynyl, or R^3 and R^4 may join to form an optionally substituted heterocyclic ring of 4 to 6 carbon atoms and 1 or 2 heteroatoms chosen from nitrogen and oxygen; R^5 is either absent or is hydrogen (H) or a C_1 - C_6 alkyl to provide a quaternary amine; m , n , and p are either the same or different and are independently either 0, 1, or 2, with the proviso that m , n , and p are not simultaneously 0; q is 0, 1, 2, 3, or 4; and Y and Z are either the same or different and are independently O, S, or NH. In a preferred embodiment, q is 2.

In some embodiments, the cationic lipid of Formula II is 2,2-dilinoleyl-4-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-[1,3]-dioxolane (DLin-K-C2-DMA; "XTC2" or "C2K"), 2,2-dilinoleyl-4-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-[1,3]-dioxolane (DLin-K-C3-DMA; "C3K"), 2,2-dilinoleyl-4-(4-dimethylaminobutyl)-[1,3]-dioxolane (DLin-K-C4-DMA; "C4K"), 2,2-dilinoleyl-5-dimethylaminomethyl-[1,3]-dioxane (DLin-K6-DMA), 2,2-dilinoleyl-4-N-methylpiperazine-[1,3]-dioxolane (DLin-K-MPZ), 2,2-dilinoleyl-4-dimethylaminomethyl-[1,3]-dioxolane (DLin-K-DMA), 2,2-dioleoyl-4-dimethylaminomethyl-[1,3]-dioxolane (DO-K-DMA), 2,2-distearoyl-4-dimethylaminomethyl-[1,3]-dioxolane (DS-K-DMA), 2,2-dilinoleyl-4-N-morpholino-[1,3]-dioxolane (DLin-K-MA), 2,2-Dilinoleyl-4-trimethylamino-[1,3]-dioxolane chloride (DLin-K-TMA.Cl), 2,2-dilinoleyl-4,5-bis(dimethylaminomethyl)-[1,3]-dioxolane (DLin-K²-DMA), 2,2-dilinoleyl-4-methylpiperazine-[1,3]-dioxolane (D-Lin-K-N-methylpiperazine), or mixtures thereof. In one embodiment the cationic lipid of Formula II is DLin-K-C2-DMA.

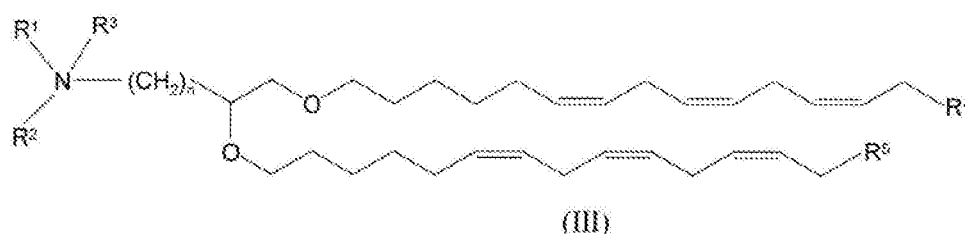
In some embodiments, the cationic lipid of Formula II forms a salt (preferably a crystalline salt) with one or more anions. In one particular embodiment, the cationic lipid of Formula II is the oxalate (e.g., hemioxalate) salt thereof, which is preferably a crystalline salt.

The synthesis of cationic lipids such as DLin-K-DMA, as well as additional cationic lipids, is described in PCT Publication No. WO 09/086558, the disclosure of which is herein

incorporated by reference in its entirety for all purposes. The synthesis of cationic lipids such as DLin-K-C2-DMA, DLin-K-C3-DMA, DLin-K-C4-DMA, DLin-K6-DMA, DLin-K-MPZ, DO-K-DMA, DS-K-DMA, DLin-K-MA, DLin-K-TMA.Cl, DLin-K²-DMA, and D-Lin-K-N-methylpiperzine, as well as additional cationic lipids, is described in PCT Application No.

- 5 PCT/US2009/060251, entitled "Improved Amino Lipids and Methods for the Delivery of Nucleic Acids," filed October 9, 2009, the disclosure of which is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety for all purposes.

In a further aspect, cationic lipids of Formula III having the following structure are useful:



- 15 or salts thereof, wherein: R¹ and R² are either the same or different and are independently an optionally substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, or C₂-C₆ alkynyl, or R¹ and R² may join to form an optionally substituted heterocyclic ring of 4 to 6 carbon atoms and 1 or 2 heteroatoms selected from the group consisting of nitrogen (N), oxygen (O), and mixtures thereof; R³ is either absent or is hydrogen (H) or a C₁-C₆ alkyl to provide a quaternary amine; R⁴ and R⁵ are either
20 absent or present and when present are either the same or different and are independently an optionally substituted C₁-C₁₀ alkyl or C₂-C₁₀ alkenyl; and n is 0, 1, 2, 3, or 4.

- In some embodiments, R¹ and R² are independently an optionally substituted C₁-C₄ alkyl, C₂-C₄ alkenyl, or C₂-C₄ alkynyl. In a preferred embodiment, R¹ and R² are both methyl groups. In another preferred embodiment, R⁴ and R⁵ are both butyl groups. In yet another
25 preferred embodiment, n is 1. In other embodiments, R³ is absent when the pH is above the pK_a of the cationic lipid and R³ is hydrogen when the pH is below the pK_a of the cationic lipid such that the amino head group is protonated. In an alternative embodiment, R³ is an optionally substituted C₁-C₄ alkyl to provide a quaternary amine. In further embodiments, R⁴ and R⁵ are independently an optionally substituted C₂-C₆ or C₂-C₄ alkyl or C₂-C₆ or C₂-C₄ alkenyl.

In an alternative embodiment, the cationic lipid of Formula III comprises ester linkages between the amino head group and one or both of the alkyl chains. In some embodiments, the cationic lipid of Formula III forms a salt (preferably a crystalline salt) with one or more anions. In one particular embodiment, the cationic lipid of Formula III is the oxalate (*e.g.*, hemioxalate) salt thereof, which is preferably a crystalline salt.

Although each of the alkyl chains in Formula III contains *cis* double bonds at positions 6, 9, and 12 (*i.e.*, *cis,cis,cis*- $\Delta^6,\Delta^9,\Delta^{12}$), in an alternative embodiment, one, two, or three of these double bonds in one or both alkyl chains may be in the *trans* configuration.

In a particular embodiment, the cationic lipid of Formula III has the structure:



γ -DLenDMA (15)

The synthesis of cationic lipids such as γ -DLenDMA (15), as well as additional cationic lipids, is described in U.S. Provisional Application No. 61/222,462, entitled "Improved Cationic Lipids and Methods for the Delivery of Nucleic Acids," filed July 1, 2009, the disclosure of which is herein incorporated by reference in its entirety for all purposes.

The synthesis of cationic lipids such as DLin-M-C3-DMA ("MC3"), as well as additional cationic lipids (*e.g.*, certain analogs of MC3), is described in U.S. Provisional Application No. 61/185,800, entitled "Novel Lipids and Compositions for the Delivery of Therapeutics," filed June 10, 2009, and U.S. Provisional Application No. 61/287,995, entitled "Methods and Compositions for Delivery of Nucleic Acids," filed December 18, 2009, the disclosures of which are herein incorporated by reference in their entirety for all purposes.

Examples of other cationic lipids or salts thereof which may be included in the lipid particles include, but are not limited to, cationic lipids such as those described in WO2011/000106, the disclosure of which is herein incorporated by reference in its entirety for all purposes, as well as cationic lipids such as N,N-dioleyl-N,N-dimethylammonium chloride (DODAC), 1,2-dioleyloxy-N,N-dimethylaminopropane (DODMA), 1,2-distearoyloxy-N,N-dimethylaminopropane (DSDMA), N-(1-(2,3-dioleyloxy)propyl)-N,N,N-trimethylammonium chloride (DOTMA), N,N-distearyl-N,N-dimethylammonium bromide (DDAB), N-(1-(2,3-

dioleoyloxy)propyl)-N,N,N-trimethylammonium chloride (DOTAP), 3-(N-(N',N'-
 dimethylaminoethane)-carbamoyl)cholesterol (DC-Chol), N-(1,2-dimyristyloxyprop-3-yl)-N,N-
 dimethyl-N-hydroxyethyl ammonium bromide (DMRIE), 2,3-dioleoyloxy-N-[2(spermine-
 carboxamido)ethyl]-N,N-dimethyl-1-propanaminiumtrifluoroacetate (DOSPA),
 5 dioctadecylamidoglycyl spermine (DOGS), 3-dimethylamino-2-(cholest-5-en-3-beta-oxybutan-
 4-oxy)-1-(cis,cis-9,12-octadecadienoxy)propane (CLinDMA), 2-[5'-(cholest-5-en-3-beta-oxy)-
 3'-oxapentoxo]-3-dimethyl-1-(cis,cis-9',12'-octadecadienoxy)propane (CpLinDMA), N,N-
 dimethyl-3,4-dioleoyloxybenzylamine (DMOBA), 1,2-N,N'-dioleoylcarbamyl-3-
 dimethylaminopropane (DOcarbDAP), 1,2-N,N'-dilinoyleylcarbamyl-3-dimethylaminopropane
 10 (DLincarbDAP), 1,2-dilinoyleylcarbamoyloxy-3-dimethylaminopropane (DLin-C-DAP), 1,2-
 dilinoyleoxy-3-(dimethylamino)acetoxyp propane (DLin-DAC), 1,2-dilinoyleoxy-3-
 morpholinopropane (DLin-MA), 1,2-dilinoyleoyl-3-dimethylaminopropane (DLinDAP), 1,2-
 dilinoyleylthio-3-dimethylaminopropane (DLin-S-DMA), 1-linoyleoyl-2-linoyleoxy-3-
 dimethylaminopropane (DLin-2-DMA), 1,2-dilinoyleoxy-3-trimethylaminopropane chloride
 15 salt (DLin-TMA.Cl), 1,2-dilinoyleoyl-3-trimethylaminopropane chloride salt (DLin-TAP.Cl), 1,2-
 dilinoyleoxy-3-(N-methylpiperazino)propane (DLin-MPZ), 3-(N,N-dilinoyleylamino)-1,2-
 propanediol (DLinAP), 3-(N,N-dioleyleamino)-1,2-propanedio (DOAP), 1,2-dilinoyleoxy-3-(2-
 N,N-dimethylamino)ethoxypropane (DLin-EG-DMA), 1,2-dioyleylcarbamoyloxy-3-
 dimethylaminopropane (DO-C-DAP), 1,2-dimyristoleoyl-3-dimethylaminopropane (DMDAP),
 20 1,2-dioleoyl-3-trimethylaminopropane chloride (DOTAP.Cl), dilinoyleylmethyl-3-
 dimethylaminopropionate (DLin-M-C2-DMA; also known as DLin-M-K-DMA or DLin-M-
 DMA), and mixtures thereof. Additional cationic lipids or salts thereof which may be included
 in the lipid particles are described in U.S. Patent Publication No. 20090023673, the disclosure of
 which is herein incorporated by reference in its entirety for all purposes.

25 The synthesis of cationic lipids such as CLinDMA, as well as additional cationic lipids,
 is described in U.S. Patent Publication No. 20060240554, the disclosure of which is herein
 incorporated by reference in its entirety for all purposes. The synthesis of cationic lipids such as
 DLin-C-DAP, DLinDAC, DLinMA, DLinDAP, DLin-S-DMA, DLin-2-DMA, DLinTMA.Cl,
 DLinTAP.Cl, DLinMPZ, DLinAP, DOAP, and DLin-EG-DMA, as well as additional cationic
 30 lipids, is described in PCT Publication No. WO 09/086558, the disclosure of which is herein

incorporated by reference in its entirety for all purposes. The synthesis of cationic lipids such as DO-C-DAP, DMDAP, DOTAP, CL, DLin-M-C2-DMA, as well as additional cationic lipids, is described in PCT Application No. PCT/US2009/060251, entitled "Improved Amino Lipids and Methods for the Delivery of Nucleic Acids," filed October 9, 2009, the disclosure of which is
5 incorporated herein by reference in its entirety for all purposes. The synthesis of a number of other cationic lipids and related analogs has been described in U.S. Patent Nos. 5,208,036; 5,264,618; 5,279,833; 5,283,185; 5,753,613; and 5,785,992; and PCT Publication No. WO 96/10390, the disclosures of which are each herein incorporated by reference in their entirety for all purposes. Additionally, a number of commercial preparations of cationic lipids can be used,
10 such as, *e.g.*, LIPOFECTIN® (including DOTMA and DOPE, available from Invitrogen); LIPOFECTAMINE® (including DOSPA and DOPE, available from Invitrogen); and TRANSFECTAM® (including DOGS, available from Promega Corp.).

In some embodiments, the cationic lipid comprises from about 50 mol % to about 90 mol %, from about 50 mol % to about 85 mol %, from about 50 mol % to about 80 mol %, from about 50 mol % to about 75 mol %, from about 50 mol % to about 70 mol %, from about 50 mol % to about 65 mol %, from about 50 mol % to about 60 mol %, from about 55 mol % to about 65 mol %, or from about 55 mol % to about 70 mol % (or any fraction thereof or range therein) of the total lipid present in the particle. In particular embodiments, the cationic lipid comprises about 50 mol %, 51 mol %, 52 mol %, 53 mol %, 54 mol %, 55 mol %, 56 mol %, 57
15 mol %, 58 mol %, 59 mol %, 60 mol %, 61 mol %, 62 mol %, 63 mol %, 64 mol %, or 65 mol % (or any fraction thereof) of the total lipid present in the particle.

In other embodiments, the cationic lipid comprises from about 2 mol % to about 60 mol %, from about 5 mol % to about 50 mol %, from about 10 mol % to about 50 mol %, from about 20 mol % to about 50 mol %, from about 20 mol % to about 40 mol %, from about 30 mol % to about 40 mol %, or about 40 mol % (or any fraction thereof or range therein) of the total
20 lipid present in the particle.

Additional percentages and ranges of cationic lipids suitable for use in the lipid particles are described in PCT Publication No. WO 09/127060, U.S. Published Application No. US 2011/0071208, PCT Publication No. WO2011/000106, and U.S. Published Application No.

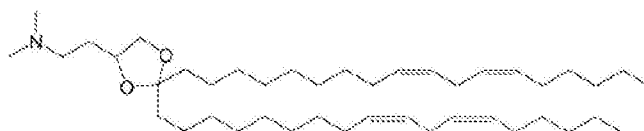
US 2011/0076335, the disclosures of which are herein incorporated by reference in their entirety for all purposes.

It should be understood that the percentage of cationic lipid present in the lipid particles is a target amount, and that the actual amount of cationic lipid present in the formulation may vary, for example, by ± 5 mol %. For example, in one exemplary lipid particle formulation, the target amount of cationic lipid is 57.1 mol %, but the actual amount of cationic lipid may be ± 5 mol %, ± 4 mol %, ± 3 mol %, ± 2 mol %, ± 1 mol %, ± 0.75 mol %, ± 0.5 mol %, ± 0.25 mol %, or ± 0.1 mol % of that target amount, with the balance of the formulation being made up of other lipid components (adding up to 100 mol % of total lipids present in the particle; however, one skilled in the art will understand that the total mol % may deviate slightly from 100% due to rounding, for example, 99.9 mol % or 100.1 mol %).

Further examples of cationic lipids useful for inclusion in lipid particles are shown below:



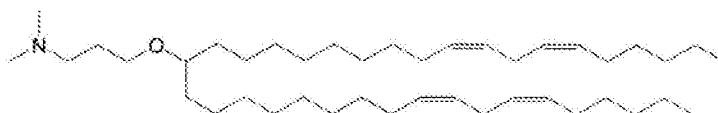
N,N-dimethyl-2,3-bis((9Z,12Z)-octadeca-9,12-dienyloxy)propan-1-amine (5)



2-(2,2-di((9Z,12Z)-octadeca-9,12-dienyl)-1,3-dioxolan-4-yl)-N,N-dimethylethanamine (6)

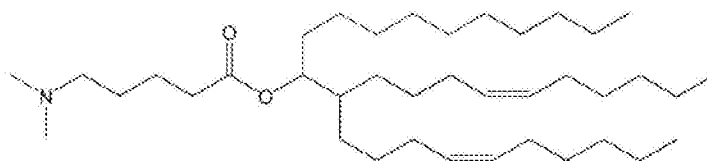


(6Z,9Z,28Z,31Z)-heptatriaconta-6,9,28,31-tetraen-19-yl 4-(dimethylamino)butanoate (7)

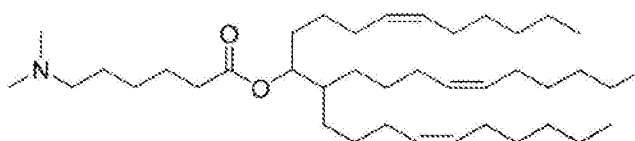


3-(((6Z,9Z,28Z,31Z)-heptatriaconta-6,9,28,31-tetraen-19-yloxy)-N,N-dimethylpropan-1-amine

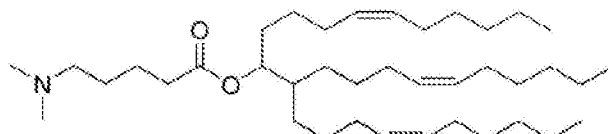
(8)



5 (Z)-12-((Z)-dec-4-enyl)docos-16-en-11-yl 5-(dimethylamino)pentanoate (53)

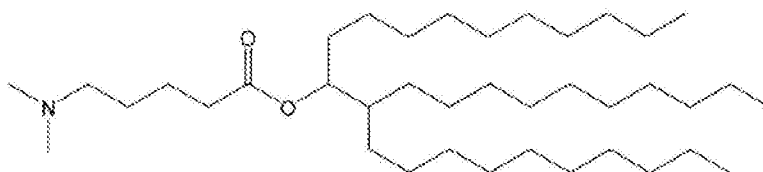


10 (6Z,16Z)-12-((Z)-dec-4-enyl)docosa-6,16-dien-11-yl 6-(dimethylamino)hexanoate (11)



(6Z,16Z)-12-((Z)-dec-4-enyl)docosa-6,16-dien-11-yl 5-(dimethylamino)pentanoate (13)

15



20 12-decyldocosan-11-yl 5-(dimethylamino)pentanoate (14).

Non-cationic Lipids

The non-cationic lipids used in the lipid particles can be any of a variety of neutral uncharged, zwitterionic, or anionic lipids capable of producing a stable complex.

Non-limiting examples of non-cationic lipids include phospholipids such as lecithin, phosphatidylethanolamine, lysolecithin, lysophosphatidylethanolamine, phosphatidylserine, phosphatidylinositol, sphingomyelin, egg sphingomyelin (ESM), cephalin, cardiolipin, phosphatidic acid, cerebrosides, dicetylphosphate, distearoylphosphatidylcholine (DSPC), dioleoylphosphatidylcholine (DOPC), dipalmitoylphosphatidylcholine (DPPC), dioleoylphosphatidylglycerol (DOPG), dipalmitoylphosphatidylglycerol (DPPG),

30 dioleoylphosphatidylethanolamine (DOPE), palmitoyl-oleoyl-phosphatidylcholine (POPC),

palmitoyloleoyl-phosphatidylethanolamine (POPE), palmitoyloleyol-phosphatidylglycerol (POPG), dioleoylphosphatidylethanolamine 4-(N-maleimidomethyl)-cyclohexane-1-carboxylate (DOPE-mal), dipalmitoyl-phosphatidylethanolamine (DPPE), dimyristoyl-phosphatidylethanolamine (DMPE), distearoyl-phosphatidylethanolamine (DSPE), monomethyl-
 5 phosphatidylethanolamine, dimethyl-phosphatidylethanolamine, dielaidoyl-phosphatidylethanolamine (DEPE), stearyl-oleoyl-phosphatidylethanolamine (SOPE), lysophosphatidylcholine, dilinoleoylphosphatidylcholine, and mixtures thereof. Other diacylphosphatidylcholine and diacylphosphatidylethanolamine phospholipids can also be used. The acyl groups in these lipids are preferably acyl groups derived from fatty acids having C₁₀-C₂₄
 10 carbon chains, *e.g.*, lauroyl, myristoyl, palmitoyl, stearoyl, or oleoyl.

Additional examples of non-cationic lipids include sterols such as cholesterol and derivatives thereof. Non-limiting examples of cholesterol derivatives include polar analogues such as 5 α -cholestanol, 5 β -coprostanol, cholesteryl-(2'-hydroxy)-ethyl ether, cholesteryl-(4'-hydroxy)-butyl ether, and 6-ketocholestanol; non-polar analogues such as 5 α -cholestane,
 15 cholestenone, 5 α -cholestanone, 5 β -cholestanone, and cholesteryl decanoate; and mixtures thereof. In preferred embodiments, the cholesterol derivative is a polar analogue such as cholesteryl-(4'-hydroxy)-butyl ether. The synthesis of cholesteryl-(2'-hydroxy)-ethyl ether is described in PCT Publication No. WO 09/127060, the disclosure of which is herein incorporated by reference in its entirety for all purposes.

20 In some embodiments, the non-cationic lipid present in the lipid particles comprises or consists of a mixture of one or more phospholipids and cholesterol or a derivative thereof. In other embodiments, the non-cationic lipid present in the lipid particles comprises or consists of one or more phospholipids, *e.g.*, a cholesterol-free lipid particle formulation. In yet other embodiments, the non-cationic lipid present in the lipid particles comprises or consists of
 25 cholesterol or a derivative thereof, *e.g.*, a phospholipid-free lipid particle formulation.

Other examples of non-cationic lipids suitable for use include nonphosphorous containing lipids such as, *e.g.*, stearylamine, dodecylamine, hexadecylamine, acetyl palmitate, glycerolricinoleate, hexadecyl stearate, isopropyl myristate, amphoteric acrylic polymers, triethanolamine-lauryl sulfate, alkyl-aryl sulfate polyethyloxylated fatty acid amides,
 30 dioctadecyldimethyl ammonium bromide, ceramide, sphingomyelin, and the like.

In some embodiments, the non-cationic lipid comprises from about 10 mol % to about 60 mol %, from about 20 mol % to about 55 mol %, from about 20 mol % to about 45 mol %, from about 20 mol % to about 40 mol %, from about 25 mol % to about 50 mol %, from about 25 mol % to about 45 mol %, from about 30 mol % to about 50 mol %, from about 30 mol % to about 45 mol %, from about 30 mol % to about 40 mol %, from about 35 mol % to about 45 mol %, from about 37 mol % to about 45 mol %, or about 35 mol %, 36 mol %, 37 mol %, 38 mol %, 39 mol %, 40 mol %, 41 mol %, 42 mol %, 43 mol %, 44 mol %, or 45 mol % (or any fraction thereof or range therein) of the total lipid present in the particle.

In embodiments where the lipid particles contain a mixture of phospholipid and cholesterol or a cholesterol derivative, the mixture may comprise up to about 40 mol %, 45 mol %, 50 mol %, 55 mol %, or 60 mol % of the total lipid present in the particle.

In some embodiments, the phospholipid component in the mixture may comprise from about 2 mol % to about 20 mol %, from about 2 mol % to about 15 mol %, from about 2 mol % to about 12 mol %, from about 4 mol % to about 15 mol %, or from about 4 mol % to about 10 mol % (or any fraction thereof or range therein) of the total lipid present in the particle. In certain embodiments, the phospholipid component in the mixture comprises from about 5 mol % to about 17 mol %, from about 7 mol % to about 17 mol %, from about 7 mol % to about 15 mol %, from about 8 mol % to about 15 mol %, or about 8 mol %, 9 mol %, 10 mol %, 11 mol %, 12 mol %, 13 mol %, 14 mol %, or 15 mol % (or any fraction thereof or range therein) of the total lipid present in the particle. As a non-limiting example, a lipid particle formulation comprising a mixture of phospholipid and cholesterol may comprise a phospholipid such as DPPC or DSPC at about 7 mol % (or any fraction thereof), *e.g.*, in a mixture with cholesterol or a cholesterol derivative at about 34 mol % (or any fraction thereof) of the total lipid present in the particle. As another non-limiting example, a lipid particle formulation comprising a mixture of phospholipid and cholesterol may comprise a phospholipid such as DPPC or DSPC at about 7 mol % (or any fraction thereof), *e.g.*, in a mixture with cholesterol or a cholesterol derivative at about 32 mol % (or any fraction thereof) of the total lipid present in the particle.

By way of further example, a lipid formulation useful has a lipid to drug (*e.g.*, siRNA) ratio of about 10:1 (*e.g.*, a lipid:drug ratio of from 9.5:1 to 11:1, or from 9.9:1 to 11:1, or from 10:1 to 10.9:1). In certain other embodiments, a lipid formulation useful has a lipid to drug (*e.g.*,

siRNA) ratio of about 9:1 (e.g., a lipid:drug ratio of from 8.5:1 to 10:1, or from 8.9:1 to 10:1, or from 9:1 to 9.9:1, including 9.1:1, 9.2:1, 9.3:1, 9.4:1, 9.5:1, 9.6:1, 9.7:1, and 9.8:1).

In other embodiments, the cholesterol component in the mixture may comprise from about 25 mol % to about 45 mol %, from about 25 mol % to about 40 mol %, from about 30 mol % to about 45 mol %, from about 30 mol % to about 40 mol %, from about 27 mol % to about 37 mol %, from about 25 mol % to about 30 mol %, or from about 35 mol % to about 40 mol % (or any fraction thereof or range therein) of the total lipid present in the particle. In certain preferred embodiments, the cholesterol component in the mixture comprises from about 25 mol % to about 35 mol %, from about 27 mol % to about 35 mol %, from about 29 mol % to about 35 mol %, from about 30 mol % to about 35 mol %, from about 30 mol % to about 34 mol %, from about 31 mol % to about 33 mol %, or about 30 mol %, 31 mol %, 32 mol %, 33 mol %, 34 mol %, or 35 mol % (or any fraction thereof or range therein) of the total lipid present in the particle.

In embodiments where the lipid particles are phospholipid-free, the cholesterol or derivative thereof may comprise up to about 25 mol %, 30 mol %, 35 mol %, 40 mol %, 45 mol %, 50 mol %, 55 mol %, or 60 mol % of the total lipid present in the particle.

In some embodiments, the cholesterol or derivative thereof in the phospholipid-free lipid particle formulation may comprise from about 25 mol % to about 45 mol %, from about 25 mol % to about 40 mol %, from about 30 mol % to about 45 mol %, from about 30 mol % to about 40 mol %, from about 31 mol % to about 39 mol %, from about 32 mol % to about 38 mol %, from about 33 mol % to about 37 mol %, from about 35 mol % to about 45 mol %, from about 30 mol % to about 35 mol %, from about 35 mol % to about 40 mol %, or about 30 mol %, 31 mol %, 32 mol %, 33 mol %, 34 mol %, 35 mol %, 36 mol %, 37 mol %, 38 mol %, 39 mol %, or 40 mol % (or any fraction thereof or range therein) of the total lipid present in the particle. As a non-limiting example, a lipid particle formulation may comprise cholesterol at about 37 mol % (or any fraction thereof) of the total lipid present in the particle. As another non-limiting example, a lipid particle formulation may comprise cholesterol at about 35 mol % (or any fraction thereof) of the total lipid present in the particle.

In other embodiments, the non-cationic lipid comprises from about 5 mol % to about

90 mol %, from about 10 mol % to about 85 mol %, from about 20 mol % to about 80 mol %, about 10 mol % (*e.g.*, phospholipid only), or about 60 mol % (*e.g.*, phospholipid and cholesterol or derivative thereof) (or any fraction thereof or range therein) of the total lipid present in the particle.

5 Additional percentages and ranges of non-cationic lipids suitable for use in the lipid particles are described in PCT Publication No. WO 09/127060, U.S. Published Application No. US 2011/0071208, PCT Publication No. WO2011/000106, and U.S. Published Application No. US 2011/0076335, the disclosures of which are herein incorporated by reference in their entirety for all purposes.

10 It should be understood that the percentage of non-cationic lipid present in the lipid particles is a target amount, and that the actual amount of non-cationic lipid present in the formulation may vary, for example, by ± 5 mol %, ± 4 mol %, ± 3 mol %, ± 2 mol %, ± 1 mol %, ± 0.75 mol %, ± 0.5 mol %, ± 0.25 mol %, or ± 0.1 mol %.

Lipid Conjugates

15 In addition to cationic and non-cationic lipids, the lipid particles may further comprise a lipid conjugate. The conjugated lipid is useful in that it prevents the aggregation of particles. Suitable conjugated lipids include, but are not limited to, PEG-lipid conjugates, POZ-lipid conjugates, ATTA-lipid conjugates, cationic-polymer-lipid conjugates (CPLs), and mixtures thereof. In certain embodiments, the particles comprise either a PEG-lipid conjugate or an
20 ATTA-lipid conjugate together with a CPL.

In a preferred embodiment, the lipid conjugate is a PEG-lipid. Examples of PEG-lipids include, but are not limited to, PEG coupled to dialkyloxypropyls (PEG-DAA) as described in, *e.g.*, PCT Publication No. WO 05/026372, PEG coupled to diacylglycerol (PEG-DAG) as described in, *e.g.*, U.S. Patent Publication Nos. 20030077829 and 2005008689, PEG coupled to
25 phospholipids such as phosphatidylethanolamine (PEG-PE), PEG conjugated to ceramides as described in, *e.g.*, U.S. Patent No. 5,885,613, PEG conjugated to cholesterol or a derivative thereof, and mixtures thereof. The disclosures of these patent documents are herein incorporated by reference in their entirety for all purposes.

Additional PEG-lipids suitable for use include, without limitation, mPEG2000-1,2-di-
30 O-alkyl-*sn*3-carbomoylglyceride (PEG-C-DOMG). The synthesis of PEG-C-DOMG is

described in PCT Publication No. WO 09/086558, the disclosure of which is herein incorporated by reference in its entirety for all purposes. Yet additional suitable PEG-lipid conjugates include, without limitation, 1-[8'-(1,2-dimyristoyl-3-propanoxy)-carboxamido-3',6'-dioxaoctanyl]carbamoyl- ω -methyl-poly(ethylene glycol) (2KPEG-DMG). The synthesis of 2KPEG-DMG is described in U.S. Patent No. 7,404,969, the disclosure of which is herein
5 incorporated by reference in its entirety for all purposes.

PEG is a linear, water-soluble polymer of ethylene PEG repeating units with two terminal hydroxyl groups. PEGs are classified by their molecular weights; for example, PEG 2000 has an average molecular weight of about 2,000 daltons, and PEG 5000 has an average
10 molecular weight of about 5,000 daltons. PEGs are commercially available from Sigma Chemical Co. and other companies and include, but are not limited to, the following: monomethoxypolyethylene glycol (MePEG-OH), monomethoxypolyethylene glycol-succinate (MePEG-S), monomethoxypolyethylene glycol-succinimidyl succinate (MePEG-S-NHS), monomethoxypolyethylene glycol-amine (MePEG-NH₂), monomethoxypolyethylene glycol-
15 tresylate (MePEG-TRES), monomethoxypolyethylene glycol-imidazolyl-carbonyl (MePEG-IM), as well as such compounds containing a terminal hydroxyl group instead of a terminal methoxy group (*e.g.*, HO-PEG-S, HO-PEG-S-NHS, HO-PEG-NH₂, *etc.*). Other PEGs such as those described in U.S. Patent Nos. 6,774,180 and 7,053,150 (*e.g.*, mPEG (20 KDa) amine) are also useful for preparing the PEG-lipid conjugates. The disclosures of these patents are herein
20 incorporated by reference in their entirety for all purposes. In addition, monomethoxypolyethyleneglycol-acetic acid (MePEG-CH₂COOH) is particularly useful for preparing PEG-lipid conjugates including, *e.g.*, PEG-DAA conjugates.

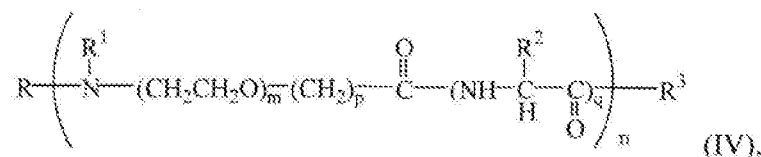
The PEG moiety of the PEG-lipid conjugates described herein may comprise an average molecular weight ranging from about 550 daltons to about 10,000 daltons. In certain
25 instances, the PEG moiety has an average molecular weight of from about 750 daltons to about 5,000 daltons (*e.g.*, from about 1,000 daltons to about 5,000 daltons, from about 1,500 daltons to about 3,000 daltons, from about 750 daltons to about 3,000 daltons, from about 750 daltons to about 2,000 daltons, *etc.*). In preferred embodiments, the PEG moiety has an average molecular weight of about 2,000 daltons or about 750 daltons.

In certain instances, the PEG can be optionally substituted by an alkyl, alkoxy, acyl, or aryl group. The PEG can be conjugated directly to the lipid or may be linked to the lipid via a linker moiety. Any linker moiety suitable for coupling the PEG to a lipid can be used including, *e.g.*, non-ester containing linker moieties and ester-containing linker moieties. In a preferred embodiment, the linker moiety is a non-ester containing linker moiety. As used herein, the term “non-ester containing linker moiety” refers to a linker moiety that does not contain a carboxylic ester bond (-OC(O)-). Suitable non-ester containing linker moieties include, but are not limited to, amido (-C(O)NH-), amino (-NR-), carbonyl (-C(O)-), carbamate (-NHC(O)O-), urea (-NHC(O)NH-), disulphide (-S-S-), ether (-O-), succinyl (-C(O)CH₂CH₂C(O)-), succinamidyl (-NHC(O)CH₂CH₂C(O)NH-), ether, disulphide, as well as combinations thereof (such as a linker containing both a carbamate linker moiety and an amido linker moiety). In a preferred embodiment, a carbamate linker is used to couple the PEG to the lipid.

In other embodiments, an ester containing linker moiety is used to couple the PEG to the lipid. Suitable ester containing linker moieties include, *e.g.*, carbonate (-OC(O)O-), succinoyl, phosphate esters (-O-(O)POH-O-), sulfonate esters, and combinations thereof.

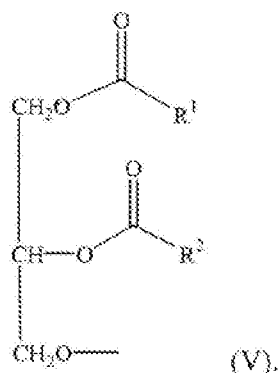
Phosphatidylethanolamines having a variety of acyl chain groups of varying chain lengths and degrees of saturation can be conjugated to PEG to form the lipid conjugate. Such phosphatidylethanolamines are commercially available, or can be isolated or synthesized using conventional techniques known to those of skill in the art. Phosphatidyl-ethanolamines containing saturated or unsaturated fatty acids with carbon chain lengths in the range of C₁₀ to C₂₆ are preferred. Phosphatidylethanolamines with mono- or diunsaturated fatty acids and mixtures of saturated and unsaturated fatty acids can also be used. Suitable phosphatidylethanolamines include, but are not limited to, dimyristoyl-phosphatidylethanolamine (DMPE), dipalmitoyl-phosphatidylethanolamine (DPPE), dioleoylphosphatidylethanolamine (DOPE), and distearoyl-phosphatidylethanolamine (DSPE).

The term “ATTA” or “polyamide” includes, without limitation, compounds described in U.S. Patent Nos. 6,320,017 and 6,586,559, the disclosures of which are herein incorporated by reference in their entirety for all purposes. These compounds include a compound having the formula:

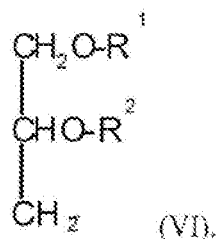


wherein R is a member selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl and acyl; R¹ is a member selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl; or optionally, R and R¹ and the nitrogen to which they are bound form an azido moiety; R² is a member of the group selected from hydrogen, optionally substituted alkyl, optionally substituted aryl and a side chain of an amino acid; R³ is a member selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halogen, hydroxy, alkoxy, mercapto, hydrazino, amino and NR⁴R⁵, wherein R⁴ and R⁵ are independently hydrogen or alkyl; n is 4 to 80; m is 2 to 6; p is 1 to 4; and q is 0 or 1. It will be apparent to those of skill in the art that other polyamides can be.

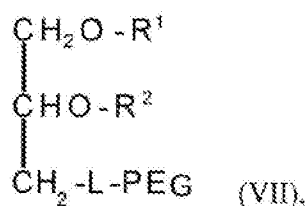
The term "diacylglycerol" or "DAG" includes a compound having 2 fatty acyl chains, R¹ and R², both of which have independently between 2 and 30 carbons bonded to the 1- and 2-position of glycerol by ester linkages. The acyl groups can be saturated or have varying degrees of unsaturation. Suitable acyl groups include, but are not limited to, lauroyl (C₁₂), myristoyl (C₁₄), palmitoyl (C₁₆), stearoyl (C₁₈), and icosoyl (C₂₀). In preferred embodiments, R¹ and R² are the same, *i.e.*, R¹ and R² are both myristoyl (*i.e.*, dimyristoyl), R¹ and R² are both stearoyl (*i.e.*, distearoyl), *etc.* Diacylglycerols have the following general formula:



The term "dialkyloxypropyl" or "DAA" includes a compound having 2 alkyl chains, R¹ and R², both of which have independently between 2 and 30 carbons. The alkyl groups can be saturated or have varying degrees of unsaturation. Dialkyloxypropyls have the following general formula:



In a preferred embodiment, the PEG-lipid is a PEG-DAA conjugate having the following formula:



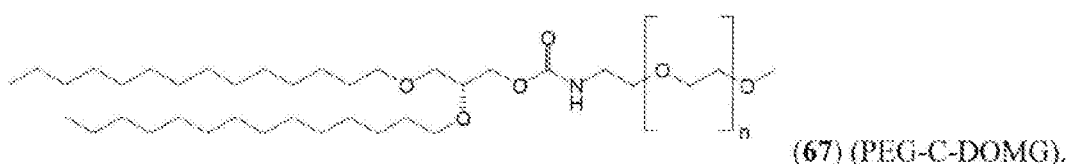
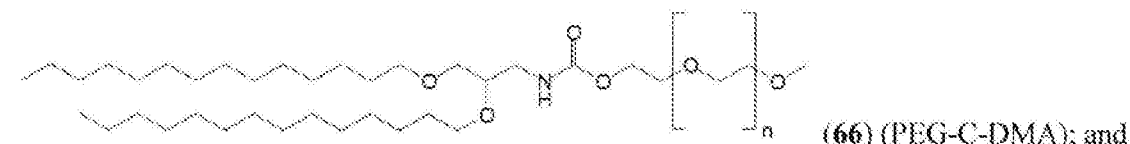
- 5 wherein R^1 and R^2 are independently selected and are long-chain alkyl groups having from about 10 to about 22 carbon atoms; PEG is a polyethyleneglycol; and L is a non-ester containing linker moiety or an ester containing linker moiety as described above. The long-chain alkyl groups can be saturated or unsaturated. Suitable alkyl groups include, but are not limited to, decyl (C_{10}), lauryl (C_{12}), myristyl (C_{14}), palmityl (C_{16}), stearyl (C_{18}), and icosyl (C_{20}). In preferred
 10 embodiments, R^1 and R^2 are the same, *i.e.*, R^1 and R^2 are both myristyl (*i.e.*, dimyristyl), R^1 and R^2 are both stearyl (*i.e.*, distearyl), *etc.*

- In Formula VII above, the PEG has an average molecular weight ranging from about 550 daltons to about 10,000 daltons. In certain instances, the PEG has an average molecular weight of from about 750 daltons to about 5,000 daltons (*e.g.* from about 1,000 daltons to about
 15 5,000 daltons, from about 1,500 daltons to about 3,000 daltons, from about 750 daltons to about 3,000 daltons, from about 750 daltons to about 2,000 daltons, *etc.*). In preferred embodiments, the PEG has an average molecular weight of about 2,000 daltons or about 750 daltons. The PEG can be optionally substituted with alkyl, alkoxy, acyl, or aryl groups. In certain embodiments, the terminal hydroxyl group is substituted with a methoxy or methyl group.

- 20 In a preferred embodiment, "L" is a non-ester containing linker moiety. Suitable non-ester containing linkers include, but are not limited to, an amido linker moiety, an amino linker moiety, a carbonyl linker moiety, a carbamate linker moiety, a urea linker moiety, an ether linker moiety, a disulphide linker moiety, a succinamidyl linker moiety, and combinations thereof. In a preferred embodiment, the non-ester containing linker moiety is a carbamate linker moiety (*i.e.*,

a PEG-C-DAA conjugate). In another preferred embodiment, the non-ester containing linker moiety is an amido linker moiety (*i.e.*, a PEG-A-DAA conjugate). In yet another preferred embodiment, the non-ester containing linker moiety is a succinamidyl linker moiety (*i.e.*, a PEG-S-DAA conjugate).

5 In particular embodiments, the PEG-lipid conjugate is selected from:



The PEG-DAA conjugates are synthesized using standard techniques and reagents known to those of skill in the art. It will be recognized that the PEG-DAA conjugates will contain various amide, amine, ether, thio, carbamate, and urea linkages. Those of skill in the art will recognize that methods and reagents for forming these bonds are well known and readily available. *See, e.g.*, March, ADVANCED ORGANIC CHEMISTRY (Wiley 1992); Larock, COMPREHENSIVE ORGANIC TRANSFORMATIONS (VCH 1989); and Furniss, VOGEL'S TEXTBOOK OF PRACTICAL ORGANIC CHEMISTRY, 5th ed. (Longman 1989). It will also be appreciated that any functional groups present may require protection and deprotection at different points in the synthesis of the PEG-DAA conjugates. Those of skill in the art will recognize that such techniques are well known. *See, e.g.*, Green and Wuts, PROTECTIVE GROUPS IN ORGANIC SYNTHESIS (Wiley 1991).

Preferably, the PEG-DAA conjugate is a PEG-didecyloxypropyl (C_{10}) conjugate, a PEG-dilauryloxypropyl (C_{12}) conjugate, a PEG-dimyristyloxypropyl (C_{14}) conjugate, a PEG-dipalmitoyloxypropyl (C_{16}) conjugate, or a PEG-distearoyloxypropyl (C_{18}) conjugate. In these embodiments, the PEG preferably has an average molecular weight of about 750 or about 2,000 daltons. In one particularly preferred embodiment, the PEG-lipid conjugate comprises PEG2000-C-DMA, wherein the "2000" denotes the average molecular weight of the PEG, the "C" denotes a carbamate linker moiety, and the "DMA" denotes dimyristyloxypropyl. In another particularly preferred embodiment, the PEG-lipid conjugate comprises PEG750-C-DMA,

wherein the “750” denotes the average molecular weight of the PEG, the “C” denotes a carbamate linker moiety, and the “DMA” denotes dimyristyloxypropyl. In particular embodiments, the terminal hydroxyl group of the PEG is substituted with a methyl group. Those of skill in the art will readily appreciate that other dialkyloxypropyls can be used in the PEG-DAA conjugates.

In addition to the foregoing, it will be readily apparent to those of skill in the art that other hydrophilic polymers can be used in place of PEG. Examples of suitable polymers that can be used in place of PEG include, but are not limited to, polyvinylpyrrolidone, polymethyloxazoline, polyethyloxazoline, polyhydroxypropyl methacrylamide, polymethacrylamide and polydimethylacrylamide, polylactic acid, polyglycolic acid, and derivatized celluloses such as hydroxymethylcellulose or hydroxyethylcellulose.

In addition to the foregoing components, the lipid particles can further comprise cationic poly(ethylene glycol) (PEG) lipids or CPLs (*see, e.g., Chen et al., Bioconj. Chem.*, 11:433-437 (2000); U.S. Patent No. 6,852,334; PCT Publication No. WO 00/62813, the disclosures of which are herein incorporated by reference in their entirety for all purposes).

Suitable CPLs include compounds of Formula VIII:



wherein A, W, and Y are as described below.

With reference to Formula VIII, “A” is a lipid moiety such as an amphipathic lipid, a neutral lipid, or a hydrophobic lipid that acts as a lipid anchor. Suitable lipid examples include, but are not limited to, diacylglycerols, dialkylglycerols, N-N-dialkylaminos, 1,2-diacyloxy-3-aminopropanes, and 1,2-dialkyl-3-aminopropanes.

“W” is a polymer or an oligomer such as a hydrophilic polymer or oligomer. Preferably, the hydrophilic polymer is a biocompatible polymer that is nonimmunogenic or possesses low inherent immunogenicity. Alternatively, the hydrophilic polymer can be weakly antigenic if used with appropriate adjuvants. Suitable nonimmunogenic polymers include, but are not limited to, PEG, polyamides, polylactic acid, polyglycolic acid, polylactic acid/polyglycolic acid copolymers, and combinations thereof. In a preferred embodiment, the polymer has a molecular weight of from about 250 to about 7,000 daltons.

“Y” is a polycationic moiety. The term polycationic moiety refers to a compound, derivative, or functional group having a positive charge, preferably at least 2 positive charges at a selected pH, preferably physiological pH. Suitable polycationic moieties include basic amino acids and their derivatives such as arginine, asparagine, glutamine, lysine, and histidine; spermine; spermidine; cationic dendrimers; polyamines; polyamine sugars; and amino polysaccharides. The polycationic moieties can be linear, such as linear tetralysine, branched or dendrimeric in structure. Polycationic moieties have between about 2 to about 15 positive charges, preferably between about 2 to about 12 positive charges, and more preferably between about 2 to about 8 positive charges at selected pH values. The selection of which polycationic moiety to employ may be determined by the type of particle application which is desired.

The charges on the polycationic moieties can be either distributed around the entire particle moiety, or alternatively, they can be a discrete concentration of charge density in one particular area of the particle moiety *e.g.*, a charge spike. If the charge density is distributed on the particle, the charge density can be equally distributed or unequally distributed. All variations of charge distribution of the polycationic moiety are encompassed.

The lipid “A” and the nonimmunogenic polymer “W” can be attached by various methods and preferably by covalent attachment. Methods known to those of skill in the art can be used for the covalent attachment of “A” and “W.” Suitable linkages include, but are not limited to, amide, amine, carboxyl, carbonate, carbamate, ester, and hydrazone linkages. It will be apparent to those skilled in the art that “A” and “W” must have complementary functional groups to effectuate the linkage. The reaction of these two groups, one on the lipid and the other on the polymer, will provide the desired linkage. For example, when the lipid is a diacylglycerol and the terminal hydroxyl is activated, for instance with NHS and DCC, to form an active ester, and is then reacted with a polymer which contains an amino group, such as with a polyamide (*see, e.g.*, U.S. Patent Nos. 6,320,017 and 6,586,559, the disclosures of which are herein incorporated by reference in their entirety for all purposes), an amide bond will form between the two groups.

In certain instances, the polycationic moiety can have a ligand attached, such as a targeting ligand or a chelating moiety for complexing calcium. Preferably, after the ligand is attached, the cationic moiety maintains a positive charge. In certain instances, the ligand that is

attached has a positive charge. Suitable ligands include, but are not limited to, a compound or device with a reactive functional group and include lipids, amphipathic lipids, carrier compounds, bioaffinity compounds, biomaterials, biopolymers, biomedical devices, analytically detectable compounds, therapeutically active compounds, enzymes, peptides, proteins, antibodies, immune stimulators, radiolabels, fluorogens, biotin, drugs, haptens, DNA, RNA, polysaccharides, liposomes, virosomes, micelles, immunoglobulins, functional groups, other targeting moieties, or toxins.

In some embodiments, the lipid conjugate (e.g., PEG-lipid) comprises from about 0.1 mol % to about 3 mol %, from about 0.5 mol % to about 3 mol %, or about 0.6 mol %, 0.7 mol %, 0.8 mol %, 0.9 mol %, 1.0 mol %, 1.1 mol %, 1.2 mol %, 1.3 mol %, 1.4 mol %, 1.5 mol %, 1.6 mol %, 1.7 mol %, 1.8 mol %, 1.9 mol %, 2.0 mol %, 2.1 mol %, 2.2 mol %, 2.3 mol %, 2.4 mol %, 2.5 mol %, 2.6 mol %, 2.7 mol %, 2.8 mol %, 2.9 mol % or 3 mol % (or any fraction thereof or range therein) of the total lipid present in the particle.

In other embodiments, the lipid conjugate (e.g., PEG-lipid) comprises from about 0 mol % to about 20 mol %, from about 0.5 mol % to about 20 mol %, from about 2 mol % to about 20 mol %, from about 1.5 mol % to about 18 mol %, from about 2 mol % to about 15 mol %, from about 4 mol % to about 15 mol %, from about 2 mol % to about 12 mol %, from about 5 mol % to about 12 mol %, or about 2 mol % (or any fraction thereof or range therein) of the total lipid present in the particle.

In further embodiments, the lipid conjugate (e.g., PEG-lipid) comprises from about 4 mol % to about 10 mol %, from about 5 mol % to about 10 mol %, from about 5 mol % to about 9 mol %, from about 5 mol % to about 8 mol %, from about 6 mol % to about 9 mol %, from about 6 mol % to about 8 mol %, or about 5 mol %, 6 mol %, 7 mol %, 8 mol %, 9 mol %, or 10 mol % (or any fraction thereof or range therein) of the total lipid present in the particle.

It should be understood that the percentage of lipid conjugate present in the lipid particles is a target amount, and that the actual amount of lipid conjugate present in the formulation may vary, for example, by ± 5 mol %, ± 4 mol %, ± 3 mol %, ± 2 mol %, ± 1 mol %, ± 0.75 mol %, ± 0.5 mol %, ± 0.25 mol %, or ± 0.1 mol %.

Additional percentages and ranges of lipid conjugates suitable for use in the lipid particles are described in PCT Publication No. WO 09/127060, U.S. Published Application No.

US 2011/0071208, PCT Publication No. WO2011/000106, and U.S. Published Application No. US 2011/0076335, the disclosures of which are herein incorporated by reference in their entirety for all purposes.

One of ordinary skill in the art will appreciate that the concentration of the lipid conjugate can be varied depending on the lipid conjugate employed and the rate at which the lipid particle is to become fusogenic.

By controlling the composition and concentration of the lipid conjugate, one can control the rate at which the lipid conjugate exchanges out of the lipid particle and, in turn, the rate at which the lipid particle becomes fusogenic. For instance, when a PEG-DAA conjugate is used as the lipid conjugate, the rate at which the lipid particle becomes fusogenic can be varied, for example, by varying the concentration of the lipid conjugate, by varying the molecular weight of the PEG, or by varying the chain length and degree of saturation of the alkyl groups on the PEG-DAA conjugate. In addition, other variables including, for example, pH, temperature, ionic strength, *etc.* can be used to vary and/or control the rate at which the lipid particle becomes fusogenic. Other methods which can be used to control the rate at which the lipid particle becomes fusogenic will become apparent to those of skill in the art upon reading this disclosure. Also, by controlling the composition and concentration of the lipid conjugate, one can control the lipid particle size.

Additional Carrier Systems

Non-limiting examples of additional lipid-based carrier systems suitable for use include lipoplexes (*see, e.g.*, U.S. Patent Publication No. 20030203865; and Zhang *et al.*, *J. Control Release*, 100:165-180 (2004)), pH-sensitive lipoplexes (*see, e.g.*, U.S. Patent Publication No. 20020192275), reversibly masked lipoplexes (*see, e.g.*, U.S. Patent Publication Nos. 20030180950), cationic lipid-based compositions (*see, e.g.*, U.S. Patent No. 6,756,054; and U.S. Patent Publication No. 20050234232), cationic liposomes (*see, e.g.*, U.S. Patent Publication Nos. 20030229040, 20020160038, and 20020012998; U.S. Patent No. 5,908,635; and PCT Publication No. WO 01/72283), anionic liposomes (*see, e.g.*, U.S. Patent Publication No. 20030026831), pH-sensitive liposomes (*see, e.g.*, U.S. Patent Publication No. 20020192274; and AU 2003210303), antibody-coated liposomes (*see, e.g.*, U.S. Patent Publication No. 20030108597; and PCT Publication No. WO 00/50008), cell-type specific liposomes (*see, e.g.*,

U.S. Patent Publication No. 20030198664), liposomes containing nucleic acid and peptides (*see, e.g.*, U.S. Patent No. 6,207,456), liposomes containing lipids derivatized with releasable hydrophilic polymers (*see, e.g.*, U.S. Patent Publication No. 20030031704), lipid-entrapped nucleic acid (*see, e.g.*, PCT Publication Nos. WO 03/057190 and WO 03/059322), lipid-encapsulated nucleic acid (*see, e.g.*, U.S. Patent Publication No. 20030129221; and U.S. Patent No. 5,756,122), other liposomal compositions (*see, e.g.*, U.S. Patent Publication Nos. 20030035829 and 20030072794; and U.S. Patent No. 6,200,599), stabilized mixtures of liposomes and emulsions (*see, e.g.*, EP1304160), emulsion compositions (*see, e.g.*, U.S. Patent No. 6,747,014), and nucleic acid micro-emulsions (*see, e.g.*, U.S. Patent Publication No. 20050037086).

Examples of polymer-based carrier systems suitable for use include, but are not limited to, cationic polymer-nucleic acid complexes (*i.e.*, polyplexes). To form a polyplex, a nucleic acid (*e.g.*, a siRNA molecule, such as an siRNA molecule described in Table A) is typically complexed with a cationic polymer having a linear, branched, star, or dendritic polymeric structure that condenses the nucleic acid into positively charged particles capable of interacting with anionic proteoglycans at the cell surface and entering cells by endocytosis. In some embodiments, the polyplex comprises nucleic acid (*e.g.*, a siRNA molecule, such as an siRNA molecule described in Table A) complexed with a cationic polymer such as polyethylenimine (PEI) (*see, e.g.*, U.S. Patent No. 6,013,240; commercially available from Qbiogene, Inc. (Carlsbad, CA) as *In vivo* jetPEI™, a linear form of PEI), polypropylenimine (PPI), polyvinylpyrrolidone (PVP), poly-L-lysine (PLL), diethylaminoethyl (DEAE)-dextran, poly(β-amino ester) (PAE) polymers (*see, e.g.*, Lynn *et al.*, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 123:8155-8156 (2001)), chitosan, polyamidoamine (PAMAM) dendrimers (*see, e.g.*, Kukowska-Latallo *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 93:4897-4902 (1996)), porphyrin (*see, e.g.*, U.S. Patent No. 6,620,805), polyvinylether (*see, e.g.*, U.S. Patent Publication No. 20040156909), polycyclic amidinium (*see, e.g.*, U.S. Patent Publication No. 20030220289), other polymers comprising primary amine, imine, guanidine, and/or imidazole groups (*see, e.g.*, U.S. Patent No. 6,013,240; PCT Publication No. WO/9602655; PCT Publication No. WO95/21931; Zhang *et al.*, *J. Control Release*, 100:165-180 (2004); and Tiera *et al.*, *Curr. Gene Ther.*, 6:59-71 (2006)), and a mixture thereof. In other embodiments, the polyplex comprises cationic polymer-nucleic acid complexes

as described in U.S. Patent Publication Nos. 20060211643, 20050222064, 20030125281, and 20030185890, and PCT Publication No. WO 03/066069; biodegradable poly(β -amino ester) polymer-nucleic acid complexes as described in U.S. Patent Publication No. 20040071654; microparticles containing polymeric matrices as described in U.S. Patent Publication No. 20040142475; other microparticle compositions as described in U.S. Patent Publication No. 20030157030; condensed nucleic acid complexes as described in U.S. Patent Publication No. 20050123600; and nanocapsule and microcapsule compositions as described in AU 2002358514 and PCT Publication No. WO 02/096551.

In certain instances, the siRNA may be complexed with cyclodextrin or a polymer thereof. Non-limiting examples of cyclodextrin-based carrier systems include the cyclodextrin-modified polymer-nucleic acid complexes described in U.S. Patent Publication No. 20040087024; the linear cyclodextrin copolymer-nucleic acid complexes described in U.S. Patent Nos. 6,509,323, 6,884,789, and 7,091,192; and the cyclodextrin polymer-complexing agent-nucleic acid complexes described in U.S. Patent No. 7,018,609. In certain other instances, the siRNA may be complexed with a peptide or polypeptide. An example of a protein-based carrier system includes, but is not limited to, the cationic oligopeptide-nucleic acid complex described in PCT Publication No. WO95/21931.

Preparation of Lipid Particles

The nucleic acid-lipid particles, in which a nucleic acid (*e.g.*, a siRNA as described in Table A) is entrapped within the lipid portion of the particle and is protected from degradation, can be formed by any method known in the art including, but not limited to, a continuous mixing method, a direct dilution process, and an in-line dilution process.

In particular embodiments, the cationic lipids may comprise lipids of Formula I-III or salts thereof, alone or in combination with other cationic lipids. In other embodiments, the non-cationic lipids are egg sphingomyelin (ESM), distearoylphosphatidylcholine (DSPC), dioleoylphosphatidylcholine (DOPC), 1-palmitoyl-2-oleoyl-phosphatidylcholine (POPC), dipalmitoyl-phosphatidylcholine (DPPC), monomethyl-phosphatidylethanolamine, dimethyl-phosphatidylethanolamine, 14:0 PE (1,2-dimyristoyl-phosphatidylethanolamine (DMPE)), 16:0 PE (1,2-dipalmitoyl-phosphatidylethanolamine (DPPE)), 18:0 PE (1,2-distearoyl-phosphatidylethanolamine (DSPE)), 18:1 PE (1,2-dioleoyl-phosphatidylethanolamine (DOPE)),

18:1 trans PE (1,2-diacyldoylethanolamine (DEPE)), 18:0-18:1 PE (1-stearoyl-2-oleoyl-phosphatidylethanolamine (SOPE)), 16:0-18:1 PE (1-palmitoyl-2-oleoyl-phosphatidylethanolamine (POPE)), polyethylene glycol-based polymers (*e.g.*, PEG 2000, PEG 5000, PEG-modified diacylglycerols, or PEG-modified dialkylpropyls), cholesterol,
5 derivatives thereof, or combinations thereof.

In certain embodiments, the nucleic acid-lipid particles produced via a continuous mixing method, *e.g.*, a process that includes providing an aqueous solution comprising a siRNA in a first reservoir, providing an organic lipid solution in a second reservoir (wherein the lipids present in the organic lipid solution are solubilized in an organic solvent, *e.g.*, a lower alkanol
10 such as ethanol), and mixing the aqueous solution with the organic lipid solution such that the organic lipid solution mixes with the aqueous solution so as to substantially instantaneously produce a lipid vesicle (*e.g.*, liposome) encapsulating the siRNA within the lipid vesicle. This process and the apparatus for carrying out this process are described in detail in U.S. Patent Publication No. 20040142025, the disclosure of which is herein incorporated by reference in its
15 entirety for all purposes.

The action of continuously introducing lipid and buffer solutions into a mixing environment, such as in a mixing chamber, causes a continuous dilution of the lipid solution with the buffer solution, thereby producing a lipid vesicle substantially instantaneously upon mixing. As used herein, the phrase “continuously diluting a lipid solution with a buffer
20 solution” (and variations) generally means that the lipid solution is diluted sufficiently rapidly in a hydration process with sufficient force to effectuate vesicle generation. By mixing the aqueous solution comprising a nucleic acid with the organic lipid solution, the organic lipid solution undergoes a continuous stepwise dilution in the presence of the buffer solution (*i.e.*, aqueous solution) to produce a nucleic acid-lipid particle.

25 The nucleic acid-lipid particles formed using the continuous mixing method typically have a size of from about 30 nm to about 150 nm, from about 40 nm to about 150 nm, from about 50 nm to about 150 nm, from about 60 nm to about 130 nm, from about 70 nm to about 110 nm, from about 70 nm to about 100 nm, from about 80 nm to about 100 nm, from about 90 nm to about 100 nm, from about 70 to about 90 nm, from about 80 nm to about 90 nm, from
30 about 70 nm to about 80 nm, less than about 120 nm, 110 nm, 100 nm, 90 nm, or 80 nm, or

about 30 nm, 35 nm, 40 nm, 45 nm, 50 nm, 55 nm, 60 nm, 65 nm, 70 nm, 75 nm, 80 nm, 85 nm, 90 nm, 95 nm, 100 nm, 105 nm, 110 nm, 115 nm, 120 nm, 125 nm, 130 nm, 135 nm, 140 nm, 145 nm, or 150 nm (or any fraction thereof or range therein). The particles thus formed do not aggregate and are optionally sized to achieve a uniform particle size.

5 In another embodiment, the nucleic acid-lipid particles produced via a direct dilution process that includes forming a lipid vesicle (*e.g.*, liposome) solution and immediately and directly introducing the lipid vesicle solution into a collection vessel containing a controlled amount of dilution buffer. In preferred aspects, the collection vessel includes one or more elements configured to stir the contents of the collection vessel to facilitate dilution. In one
10 aspect, the amount of dilution buffer present in the collection vessel is substantially equal to the volume of lipid vesicle solution introduced thereto. As a non-limiting example, a lipid vesicle solution in 45% ethanol when introduced into the collection vessel containing an equal volume of dilution buffer will advantageously yield smaller particles.

In yet another embodiment, the nucleic acid-lipid particles produced via an in-line
15 dilution process in which a third reservoir containing dilution buffer is fluidly coupled to a second mixing region. In this embodiment, the lipid vesicle (*e.g.*, liposome) solution formed in a first mixing region is immediately and directly mixed with dilution buffer in the second mixing region. In preferred aspects, the second mixing region includes a T-connector arranged so that the lipid vesicle solution and the dilution buffer flows meet as opposing 180° flows; however,
20 connectors providing shallower angles can be used, *e.g.*, from about 27° to about 180° (*e.g.*, about 90°). A pump mechanism delivers a controllable flow of buffer to the second mixing region. In one aspect, the flow rate of dilution buffer provided to the second mixing region is controlled to be substantially equal to the flow rate of lipid vesicle solution introduced thereto from the first mixing region. This embodiment advantageously allows for more control of the
25 flow of dilution buffer mixing with the lipid vesicle solution in the second mixing region, and therefore also the concentration of lipid vesicle solution in buffer throughout the second mixing process. Such control of the dilution buffer flow rate advantageously allows for small particle size formation at reduced concentrations.

These processes and the apparatuses for carrying out these direct dilution and in-line dilution processes are described in detail in U.S. Patent Publication No. 20070042031, the disclosure of which is herein incorporated by reference in its entirety for all purposes.

The nucleic acid-lipid particles formed using the direct dilution and in-line dilution processes typically have a size of from about 30 nm to about 150 nm, from about 40 nm to about 150 nm, from about 50 nm to about 150 nm, from about 60 nm to about 130 nm, from about 70 nm to about 110 nm, from about 70 nm to about 100 nm, from about 80 nm to about 100 nm, from about 90 nm to about 100 nm, from about 70 to about 90 nm, from about 80 nm to about 90 nm, from about 70 nm to about 80 nm, less than about 120 nm, 110 nm, 100 nm, 90 nm, or 80 nm, or about 30 nm, 35 nm, 40 nm, 45 nm, 50 nm, 55 nm, 60 nm, 65 nm, 70 nm, 75 nm, 80 nm, 85 nm, 90 nm, 95 nm, 100 nm, 105 nm, 110 nm, 115 nm, 120 nm, 125 nm, 130 nm, 135 nm, 140 nm, 145 nm, or 150 nm (or any fraction thereof or range therein). The particles thus formed do not aggregate and are optionally sized to achieve a uniform particle size.

The lipid particles can be sized by any of the methods available for sizing liposomes. The sizing may be conducted in order to achieve a desired size range and relatively narrow distribution of particle sizes.

Several techniques are available for sizing the particles to a desired size. One sizing method, used for liposomes and equally applicable to the present particles, is described in U.S. Patent No. 4,737,323, the disclosure of which is herein incorporated by reference in its entirety for all purposes. Sonicating a particle suspension either by bath or probe sonication produces a progressive size reduction down to particles of less than about 50 nm in size. Homogenization is another method which relies on shearing energy to fragment larger particles into smaller ones. In a typical homogenization procedure, particles are recirculated through a standard emulsion homogenizer until selected particle sizes, typically between about 60 and about 80 nm, are observed. In both methods, the particle size distribution can be monitored by conventional laser-beam particle size discrimination, or QELS.

Extrusion of the particles through a small-pore polycarbonate membrane or an asymmetric ceramic membrane is also an effective method for reducing particle sizes to a relatively well-defined size distribution. Typically, the suspension is cycled through the membrane one or more times until the desired particle size distribution is achieved. The

particles may be extruded through successively smaller-pore membranes, to achieve a gradual reduction in size.

In some embodiments, the nucleic acids present in the particles (e.g., the siRNA molecules) are precondensed as described in, e.g., U.S. Patent Application No. 09/744,103, the disclosure of which is herein incorporated by reference in its entirety for all purposes.

In other embodiments, the methods may further comprise adding non-lipid polycations which are useful to effect the lipofection of cells using the present compositions. Examples of suitable non-lipid polycations include, hexadimethrine bromide (sold under the brand name POLYBRENE[®], from Aldrich Chemical Co., Milwaukee, Wisconsin, USA) or other salts of hexadimethrine. Other suitable polycations include, for example, salts of poly-L-ornithine, poly-L-arginine, poly-L-lysine, poly-D-lysine, polyallylamine, and polyethyleneimine. Addition of these salts is preferably after the particles have been formed.

In some embodiments, the nucleic acid (e.g., siRNA) to lipid ratios (mass/mass ratios) in a formed nucleic acid-lipid particle will range from about 0.01 to about 0.2, from about 0.05 to about 0.2, from about 0.02 to about 0.1, from about 0.03 to about 0.1, or from about 0.01 to about 0.08. The ratio of the starting materials (input) also falls within this range. In other embodiments, the particle preparation uses about 400 µg nucleic acid per 10 mg total lipid or a nucleic acid to lipid mass ratio of about 0.01 to about 0.08 and, more preferably, about 0.04, which corresponds to 1.25 mg of total lipid per 50 µg of nucleic acid. In other preferred embodiments, the particle has a nucleic acid:lipid mass ratio of about 0.08.

In other embodiments, the lipid to nucleic acid (e.g., siRNA) ratios (mass/mass ratios) in a formed nucleic acid-lipid particle will range from about 1 (1:1) to about 100 (100:1), from about 5 (5:1) to about 100 (100:1), from about 1 (1:1) to about 50 (50:1), from about 2 (2:1) to about 50 (50:1), from about 3 (3:1) to about 50 (50:1), from about 4 (4:1) to about 50 (50:1), from about 5 (5:1) to about 50 (50:1), from about 1 (1:1) to about 25 (25:1), from about 2 (2:1) to about 25 (25:1), from about 3 (3:1) to about 25 (25:1), from about 4 (4:1) to about 25 (25:1), from about 5 (5:1) to about 25 (25:1), from about 5 (5:1) to about 20 (20:1), from about 5 (5:1) to about 15 (15:1), from about 5 (5:1) to about 10 (10:1), or about 5 (5:1), 6 (6:1), 7 (7:1), 8 (8:1), 9 (9:1), 10 (10:1), 11 (11:1), 12 (12:1), 13 (13:1), 14 (14:1), 15 (15:1), 16 (16:1), 17 (17:1), 18 (18:1), 19 (19:1), 20 (20:1), 21 (21:1), 22 (22:1), 23 (23:1), 24 (24:1), or 25 (25:1), or

any fraction thereof or range therein. The ratio of the starting materials (input) also falls within this range.

As previously discussed, the conjugated lipid may further include a CPL. A variety of general methods for making lipid particle-CPLs (CPL-containing lipid particles) are discussed herein. Two general techniques include the "post-insertion" technique, that is, insertion of a CPL into, for example, a pre-formed lipid particle, and the "standard" technique, wherein the CPL is included in the lipid mixture during, for example, the lipid particle formation steps. The post-insertion technique results in lipid particles having CPLs mainly in the external face of the lipid particle bilayer membrane, whereas standard techniques provide lipid particles having CPLs on both internal and external faces. The method is especially useful for vesicles made from phospholipids (which can contain cholesterol) and also for vesicles containing PEG-lipids (such as PEG-DAA's and PEG-DAGs). Methods of making lipid particle-CPLs are taught, for example, in U.S. Patent Nos. 5,705,385; 6,586,410; 5,981,501; 6,534,484; and 6,852,334; U.S. Patent Publication No. 20020072121; and PCT Publication No. WO 00/62813, the disclosures of which are herein incorporated by reference in their entirety for all purposes.

Administration of Lipid Particles

The lipid particles (*e.g.*, a nucleic-acid lipid particle) can be adsorbed to almost any cell type with which they are mixed or contacted. Once adsorbed, the particles can either be endocytosed by a portion of the cells, exchange lipids with cell membranes, or fuse with the cells. Transfer or incorporation of the siRNA portion of the particle can take place via any one of these pathways. In particular, when fusion takes place, the particle membrane is integrated into the cell membrane and the contents of the particle combine with the intracellular fluid.

The lipid particles (*e.g.*, nucleic acid-lipid particles) can be administered either alone or in a mixture with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier (*e.g.*, physiological saline or phosphate buffer) selected in accordance with the route of administration and standard pharmaceutical practice. Generally, normal buffered saline (*e.g.*, 135-150 mM NaCl) will be employed as the pharmaceutically acceptable carrier. Other suitable carriers include, *e.g.*, water, buffered water, 0.4% saline, 0.3% glycine, and the like, including glycoproteins for enhanced stability, such as albumin, lipoprotein, globulin, *etc.* Additional suitable carriers are described in, *e.g.*,

REMINGTON'S PHARMACEUTICAL SCIENCES, Mack Publishing Company, Philadelphia,

PA, 17th ed. (1985). As used herein, "carrier" includes any and all solvents, dispersion media, vehicles, coatings, diluents, antibacterial and antifungal agents, isotonic and absorption delaying agents, buffers, carrier solutions, suspensions, colloids, and the like. The phrase "pharmaceutically acceptable" refers to molecular entities and compositions that do not produce an allergic or similar untoward reaction when administered to a human.

The pharmaceutically acceptable carrier is generally added following lipid particle formation. Thus, after the lipid particle is formed, the particle can be diluted into pharmaceutically acceptable carriers such as normal buffered saline.

The concentration of particles in the pharmaceutical formulations can vary widely, *i.e.*, from less than about 0.05%, usually at or at least about 2 to 5%, to as much as about 10 to 90% by weight, and will be selected primarily by fluid volumes, viscosities, *etc.*, in accordance with the particular mode of administration selected. For example, the concentration may be increased to lower the fluid load associated with treatment. This may be particularly desirable in patients having atherosclerosis-associated congestive heart failure or severe hypertension. Alternatively, particles composed of irritating lipids may be diluted to low concentrations to lessen inflammation at the site of administration.

The pharmaceutical compositions may be sterilized by conventional, well-known sterilization techniques. Aqueous solutions can be packaged for use or filtered under aseptic conditions and lyophilized, the lyophilized preparation being combined with a sterile aqueous solution prior to administration. The compositions can contain pharmaceutically acceptable auxiliary substances as required to approximate physiological conditions, such as pH adjusting and buffering agents, tonicity adjusting agents and the like, for example, sodium acetate, sodium lactate, sodium chloride, potassium chloride, and calcium chloride. Additionally, the particle suspension may include lipid-protective agents which protect lipids against free-radical and lipid-peroxidative damages on storage. Lipophilic free-radical quenchers, such as α -tocopherol, and water-soluble iron-specific chelators, such as ferrioxamine, are suitable.

***In vivo* Administration**

Systemic delivery for *in vivo* therapy, *e.g.*, delivery of a siRNA molecule described herein, such as an siRNA described in Table A, to a distal target cell via body systems such as the circulation, has been achieved using nucleic acid-lipid particles such as those described in

PCT Publication Nos. WO 05/007196, WO 05/121348, WO 05/120152, and WO 04/002453, the disclosures of which are herein incorporated by reference in their entirety for all purposes.

For *in vivo* administration, administration can be in any manner known in the art, *e.g.*, by injection, oral administration, inhalation (*e.g.*, intranasal or intratracheal), transdermal application, or rectal administration. Administration can be accomplished via single or divided doses. The pharmaceutical compositions can be administered parenterally, *i.e.*, intraarticularly, intravenously, intraperitoneally, subcutaneously, or intramuscularly. In some embodiments, the pharmaceutical compositions are administered intravenously or intraperitoneally by a bolus injection (*see, e.g.*, U.S. Patent No. 5,286,634). Intracellular nucleic acid delivery has also been discussed in Straubinger *et al.*, *Methods Enzymol.*, 101:512 (1983); Mannino *et al.*, *Biotechniques*, 6:682 (1988); Nicolau *et al.*, *Crit. Rev. Ther. Drug Carrier Syst.*, 6:239 (1989); and Behr, *Acc. Chem. Res.*, 26:274 (1993). Still other methods of administering lipid-based therapeutics are described in, for example, U.S. Patent Nos. 3,993,754; 4,145,410; 4,235,871; 4,224,179; 4,522,803; and 4,588,578. The lipid particles can be administered by direct injection at the site of disease or by injection at a site distal from the site of disease (*see, e.g.*, Culver, HUMAN GENE THERAPY, MaryAnn Liebert, Inc., Publishers, New York. pp.70-71(1994)). The disclosures of the above-described references are herein incorporated by reference in their entirety for all purposes.

In embodiments where the lipid particles are administered intravenously, at least about 5%, 10%, 15%, 20%, or 25% of the total injected dose of the particles is present in plasma about 8, 12, 24, 36, or 48 hours after injection. In other embodiments, more than about 20%, 30%, 40% and as much as about 60%, 70% or 80% of the total injected dose of the lipid particles is present in plasma about 8, 12, 24, 36, or 48 hours after injection. In certain instances, more than about 10% of a plurality of the particles is present in the plasma of a mammal about 1 hour after administration. In certain other instances, the presence of the lipid particles is detectable at least about 1 hour after administration of the particle. In some embodiments, the presence of a siRNA molecule is detectable in cells at about 8, 12, 24, 36, 48, 60, 72 or 96 hours after administration. In other embodiments, downregulation of expression of a target sequence, such as a viral or host sequence, by a siRNA molecule is detectable at about 8, 12, 24, 36, 48, 60, 72 or 96 hours after administration. In yet other embodiments, downregulation of expression of a target sequence,

such as a viral or host sequence, by a siRNA molecule occurs preferentially in infected cells and/or cells capable of being infected. In further embodiments, the presence or effect of a siRNA molecule in cells at a site proximal or distal to the site of administration is detectable at about 12, 24, 48, 72, or 96 hours, or at about 6, 8, 10, 12, 14, 16, 18, 19, 20, 22, 24, 26, or 28 days after administration. In additional embodiments, the lipid particles are administered parenterally or intraperitoneally.

The compositions, either alone or in combination with other suitable components, can be made into aerosol formulations (*i.e.*, they can be "nebulized") to be administered via inhalation (*e.g.*, intranasally or intratracheally) (*see*, Brigham *et al.*, *Am. J. Sci.*, 298:278 (1989)).

Aerosol formulations can be placed into pressurized acceptable propellants, such as dichlorodifluoromethane, propane, nitrogen, and the like.

In certain embodiments, the pharmaceutical compositions may be delivered by intranasal sprays, inhalation, and/or other aerosol delivery vehicles. Methods for delivering nucleic acid compositions directly to the lungs via nasal aerosol sprays have been described, *e.g.*, in U.S. Patent Nos. 5,756,353 and 5,804,212. Likewise, the delivery of drugs using intranasal microparticle resins and lysophosphatidyl-glycerol compounds (U.S. Patent 5,725,871) are also well-known in the pharmaceutical arts. Similarly, transmucosal drug delivery in the form of a polytetrafluoroethylene support matrix is described in U.S. Patent No. 5,780,045. The disclosures of the above-described patents are herein incorporated by reference in their entirety for all purposes.

Formulations suitable for parenteral administration, such as, for example, by intraarticular (in the joints), intravenous, intramuscular, intradermal, intraperitoneal, and subcutaneous routes, include aqueous and non-aqueous, isotonic sterile injection solutions, which can contain antioxidants, buffers, bacteriostats, and solutes that render the formulation isotonic with the blood of the intended recipient, and aqueous and non-aqueous sterile suspensions that can include suspending agents, solubilizers, thickening agents, stabilizers, and preservatives.

Generally, when administered intravenously, the lipid particle formulations are formulated with a suitable pharmaceutical carrier. Suitable formulations are found, for example, in REMINGTON'S PHARMACEUTICAL SCIENCES, Mack Publishing Company,

Philadelphia, PA, 17th ed. (1985). A variety of aqueous carriers may be used, for example, water, buffered water, 0.4% saline, 0.3% glycine, and the like, and may include glycoproteins for enhanced stability, such as albumin, lipoprotein, globulin, *etc.* Generally, normal buffered saline (135-150 mM NaCl) will be employed as the pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, but other
5 suitable carriers will suffice. These compositions can be sterilized by conventional liposomal sterilization techniques, such as filtration. The compositions may contain pharmaceutically acceptable auxiliary substances as required to approximate physiological conditions, such as pH adjusting and buffering agents, tonicity adjusting agents, wetting agents and the like, for example, sodium acetate, sodium lactate, sodium chloride, potassium chloride, calcium chloride,
10 sorbitan monolaurate, triethanolamine oleate, *etc.* These compositions can be sterilized using the techniques referred to above or, alternatively, they can be produced under sterile conditions. The resulting aqueous solutions may be packaged for use or filtered under aseptic conditions and lyophilized, the lyophilized preparation being combined with a sterile aqueous solution prior to administration.

15 In certain applications, the lipid particles disclosed herein may be delivered via oral administration to the individual. The particles may be incorporated with excipients and used in the form of ingestible tablets, buccal tablets, troches, capsules, pills, lozenges, elixirs, mouthwash, suspensions, oral sprays, syrups, wafers, and the like (*see, e.g.*, U.S. Patent Nos. 5,641,515, 5,580,579, and 5,792,451, the disclosures of which are herein incorporated by
20 reference in their entirety for all purposes). These oral dosage forms may also contain the following: binders, gelatin; excipients, lubricants, and/or flavoring agents. When the unit dosage form is a capsule, it may contain, in addition to the materials described above, a liquid carrier. Various other materials may be present as coatings or to otherwise modify the physical form of the dosage unit. Of course, any material used in preparing any unit dosage form should
25 be pharmaceutically pure and substantially non-toxic in the amounts employed.

Typically, these oral formulations may contain at least about 0.1% of the lipid particles or more, although the percentage of the particles may, of course, be varied and may conveniently be between about 1% or 2% and about 60% or 70% or more of the weight or volume of the total formulation. Naturally, the amount of particles in each therapeutically useful composition may
30 be prepared in such a way that a suitable dosage will be obtained in any given unit dose of the

compound. Factors such as solubility, bioavailability, biological half-life, route of administration, product shelf life, as well as other pharmacological considerations will be contemplated by one skilled in the art of preparing such pharmaceutical formulations, and as such, a variety of dosages and treatment regimens may be desirable.

5 Formulations suitable for oral administration can consist of: (a) liquid solutions, such as an effective amount of a packaged siRNA molecule (*e.g.*, a siRNA molecule described in Table A) suspended in diluents such as water, saline, or PEG 400; (b) capsules, sachets, or tablets, each containing a predetermined amount of a siRNA molecule, as liquids, solids, granules, or gelatin; (c) suspensions in an appropriate liquid; and (d) suitable emulsions. Tablet
10 forms can include one or more of lactose, sucrose, mannitol, sorbitol, calcium phosphates, corn starch, potato starch, microcrystalline cellulose, gelatin, colloidal silicon dioxide, talc, magnesium stearate, stearic acid, and other excipients, colorants, fillers, binders, diluents, buffering agents, moistening agents, preservatives, flavoring agents, dyes, disintegrating agents, and pharmaceutically compatible carriers. Lozenge forms can comprise a siRNA molecule in a
15 flavor, *e.g.*, sucrose, as well as pastilles comprising the therapeutic nucleic acid in an inert base, such as gelatin and glycerin or sucrose and acacia emulsions, gels, and the like containing, in addition to the siRNA molecule, carriers known in the art.

 In another example of their use, lipid particles can be incorporated into a broad range of topical dosage forms. For instance, a suspension containing nucleic acid-lipid particles can be
20 formulated and administered as gels, oils, emulsions, topical creams, pastes, ointments, lotions, foams, mousses, and the like.

 The amount of particles administered will depend upon the ratio of siRNA molecules to lipid, the particular siRNA used, the strain of HBV being treated, the age, weight, and condition of the patient, and the judgment of the clinician, but will generally be between about
25 0.01 and about 50 mg per kilogram of body weight, preferably between about 0.1 and about 5 mg/kg of body weight, or about 10^8 - 10^{10} particles per administration (*e.g.*, injection).

 The following describes all possible “two way” combinations of two different siRNAs selected from the group of siRNAs named 1m thru 15m (*see*, Table A). The term
30 “combination”, means that the combined siRNA molecules are present together in the same composition of matter (*e.g.*, dissolved together within the same solution; or present together

within the same lipid particle; or present together in the same pharmaceutical formulation of lipid particles, although each lipid particle within the pharmaceutical formulation may or may not include each different siRNA of the siRNA combination). The combined siRNA molecules usually are not covalently linked together.

5 The individual siRNAs are each identified with a name, 1m thru 15m, as shown in Table A. Each siRNA number within a combination is separated with a dash (-); for example, the notation "1m-2m" represents the combination of siRNA number 1m and siRNA number 2m. The dash does not mean that the different siRNA molecules within the combination are covalently linked to each other. Different siRNA combinations are separated by a semicolon.

10 The order of the siRNA numbers in a combination is not significant. For example, the combination 1m-2m is equivalent to the combination 2m-1m because both of these notations describe the same combination of siRNA number 1m with siRNA number 2m.

 The siRNA two-way and three-way combinations are useful, for example, to treat HBV and/or HDV infection in humans, and to ameliorate at least one symptom associated with the

15 HBV infection and/or HDV infection.

 In certain embodiments, the siRNA is administered via nucleic acid lipid particle.

 In certain embodiments, with respect to methods that include the use of a cocktail of siRNAs encapsulated within lipid particles, the different siRNA molecules are co-encapsulated in the same lipid particle.

20 In certain embodiments, the with respect to methods that include the use of a cocktail of siRNAs encapsulated within lipid particles, each type of siRNA species present in the cocktail is encapsulated in its own particle.

 In certain embodiments, the with respect to methods that include the use of a cocktail of siRNAs encapsulated within lipid particles, some siRNA species are coencapsulated in the same

25 particle while other siRNA species are encapsulated in different particles.

Formulation and Administration of Two or More Agents

 It will be understood that the agents can be formulated together in a single preparation or that they can be formulated separately and, thus, administered separately, either simultaneously or sequentially. In one embodiment, when the agents are administered sequentially (e.g. at

30 different times), the agents may be administered so that their biological effects overlap (i.e. each

agent is producing a biological effect at a single given time).

The agents can be formulated for and administered using any acceptable route of administration depending on the agent selected. For example, suitable routes include, but are not limited to, oral, sublingual, buccal, topical, transdermal, parenteral, subcutaneous, intraperitoneal, intrapulmonary, and intranasal, and, if desired for local treatment, intralesional administration. In one embodiment, the small molecule agents identified herein can be administered orally. In another embodiment, the oligomeric nucleotides can be administered by injection (e.g., into a blood vessel, such as a vein), or subcutaneously. In some embodiments, a subject in need thereof is administered one or more agent orally (e.g., in pill form), and also one or more oligomeric nucleotides by injection or subcutaneously.

Typically, the oligomeric nucleotides targeted to the Hepatitis B genome are administered intravenously, for example in a lipid nanoparticle formulation, however, the present invention is not limited to intravenous formulations comprising the oligomeric nucleotides or to treatment methods wherein an oligomeric nucleotides is administered intravenously.

The agents can be individually formulated by mixing at ambient temperature at the appropriate pH, and at the desired degree of purity, with physiologically acceptable carriers, *i.e.*, carriers that are non-toxic to recipients at the dosages and concentrations employed. The pH of the formulation depends mainly on the particular use and the concentration of compound, but may typically range anywhere from about 3 to about 8. The agents ordinarily will be stored as a solid composition, although lyophilized formulations or aqueous solutions are acceptable.

Compositions comprising the agents can be formulated, dosed, and administered in a fashion consistent with good medical practice. Factors for consideration in this context include the particular disorder being treated, the particular mammal being treated, the clinical condition of the individual patient, the cause of the disorder, the site of administration, the method of administration, the scheduling of administration, and other factors known to medical practitioners.

The agents may be administered in any convenient administrative form, *e.g.*, tablets, powders, capsules, solutions, dispersions, suspensions, syrups, sprays, suppositories, gels, emulsions, patches, etc. Such compositions may contain components conventional in

pharmaceutical preparations, *e.g.*, diluents, carriers, pH modifiers, sweeteners, bulking agents, and further active agents. If parenteral administration is desired, the compositions will be sterile and in a solution or suspension form suitable for injection or infusion.

Suitable carriers and excipients are well known to those skilled in the art and are described in detail in, *e.g.*, Ansel, Howard C., et al., Ansel's Pharmaceutical Dosage Forms and Drug Delivery Systems. Philadelphia: Lippincott, Williams & Wilkins, 2004; Gennaro, Alfonso R., et al. Remington: The Science and Practice of Pharmacy. Philadelphia: Lippincott, Williams & Wilkins, 2000; and Rowe, Raymond C. Handbook of Pharmaceutical Excipients. Chicago, Pharmaceutical Press, 2005. The formulations may also include one or more buffers, stabilizing agents, surfactants, wetting agents, lubricating agents, emulsifiers, suspending agents, preservatives, antioxidants, opaquing agents, glidants, processing aids, colorants, sweeteners, perfuming agents, flavoring agents, diluents and other known additives to provide an elegant presentation of the drug or aid in the manufacturing of the pharmaceutical product (*i.e.*, medicament).

The agents are typically dosed at least at a level to reach the desired biological effect. Thus, an effective dosing regimen will dose at least a minimum amount that reaches the desired biological effect, or biologically effective dose, however, the dose should not be so high as to outweigh the benefit of the biological effect with unacceptable side effects. Therefore, an effective dosing regimen will dose no more than the maximum tolerated dose ("MTD"). The maximum tolerated dose is defined as the highest dose that produces an acceptable incidence of dose-limiting toxicities ("DLT"). Doses that cause an unacceptable rate of DLT are considered non-tolerated. Typically, the MTD for a particular schedule is established in phase 1 clinical trials. These are usually conducted in patients by starting at a safe starting dose of 1/10 the severe toxic dose ("STD10") in rodents (on a mg/m² basis) and accruing patients in cohorts of three, escalating the dose according to a modified Fibonacci sequence in which ever higher escalation steps have ever decreasing relative increments (*e.g.*, dose increases of 100%, 65%, 50%, 40%, and 30% to 35% thereafter). The dose escalation is continued in cohorts of three patients until a non-tolerated dose is reached. The next lower dose level that produces an acceptable rate of DLT is considered to be the MTD.

The amount of the agents administered will depend upon the particular agent used, the strain of HBV being treated, the age, weight, and condition of the patient, and the judgment of the clinician, but will generally be between about 0.2 to 2.0 grams per day.

Kits

5 One embodiment provides a kit. The kit may comprise a container comprising the combination. Suitable containers include, for example, bottles, vials, syringes, blister pack, etc. The container may be formed from a variety of materials such as glass or plastic. The container may hold the combination which is effective for treating the condition and may have a sterile access port (for example, the container may be an intravenous solution bag or a vial having a
10 stopper pierceable by a hypodermic injection needle).

The kit may further comprise a label or package-insert on or associated with the container. The term "package-insert" is used to refer to instructions customarily included in commercial packages of therapeutic agents that contain information about the indications, usage, dosage, administration, contraindications and/or warnings concerning the use of such therapeutic
15 agents. In one embodiment, the label or package inserts indicates that the therapeutic agents can be used to treat a viral infection, such as Hepatitis B.

In certain embodiments, the kits are suitable for the delivery of solid oral forms of the therapeutic agents, such as tablets or capsules. Such a kit preferably includes a number of unit dosages. Such kits can include a card having the dosages oriented in the order of their intended
20 use. An example of such a kit is a "blister pack". Blister packs are well known in the packaging industry and are widely used for packaging pharmaceutical unit dosage forms. If desired, a memory aid can be provided, for example in the form of numbers, letters, or other markings or with a calendar insert, designating the days in the treatment schedule in which the dosages can be administered.

25 According to another embodiment, a kit may comprise (a) a first container with one agent contained therein; and (b) a second container with a second agent contained therein. Alternatively, or additionally, the kit may further comprise a third container comprising a pharmaceutically-acceptable buffer, such as bacteriostatic water for injection (BWFI), phosphate-buffered saline, Ringer's solution and dextrose solution. It may further include other

materials desirable from a commercial and user standpoint, including other buffers, diluents, filters, needles, and syringes.

The kit may further comprise directions for the administration of the therapeutic agents. For example, the kit may further comprise directions for the simultaneous, sequential or separate
5 administration of the therapeutic agents to a patient in need thereof.

In certain other embodiments, the kit may comprise a container for containing separate compositions such as a divided bottle or a divided foil packet, however, the separate compositions may also be contained within a single, undivided container. In certain embodiments, the kit comprises directions for the administration of the separate therapeutic
10 agents. The kit form is particularly advantageous when the separate therapeutic agents are preferably administered in different dosage forms (e.g., oral and parenteral), are administered at different dosage intervals, or when titration of the individual therapeutic agents of the combination is desired by the prescribing physician.

In one embodiment the invention provides a method for treating hepatitis B in an animal
15 comprising administering to the animal, at least two agents selected from the group consisting of Compound 3, Compound 4, entecavir, lamivudine, and siRNA-NP.

In one embodiment, the methods of the invention exclude a method for treating hepatitis B in an animal comprising administering to the animal a synergistically effective amount of i) a
formation inhibitor of covalently closed circular DNA and ii) a nucleoside or nucleotide analog.

20 In one embodiment, the pharmaceutical compositions of the invention exclude compositions comprising, i) a formation inhibitor of covalently closed circular DNA and ii) a nucleoside or nucleotide analog as the only active hepatitis B therapeutic agents.

In one embodiment, the kits of the invention exclude kits comprising, i) a formation inhibitor of covalently closed circular DNA and ii) a nucleoside or nucleotide analog as the only
25 hepatitis B agents.

In one embodiment, the methods of the invention exclude a method for treating hepatitis B in an animal comprising administering to the animal i) one or more siRNA that target a hepatitis B virus and ii) a reverse transcriptase inhibitor.

In one embodiment, the pharmaceutical compositions of the invention exclude compositions comprising, i) one or more siRNA that target a hepatitis B virus and ii) a reverse transcriptase inhibitor as the only active hepatitis B therapeutic agents.

5 In one embodiment, the kits of the invention exclude kits comprising, i) one or more siRNA that target a hepatitis B virus and ii) a reverse transcriptase inhibitor as the only hepatitis B agents.

In one embodiment the invention provides a method for treating hepatitis B in an animal comprising administering to the animal, at least two agents selected from the group consisting of:

- 10 a) reverse transcriptase inhibitors;
b) capsid inhibitors;
c) cccDNA formation inhibitors;
d) sAg secretion inhibitors; and
e) immunostimulators.

15 In one embodiment the invention provides a kit comprising at least two agents selected from the group consisting of:

- a) reverse transcriptase inhibitors;
b) capsid inhibitors;
c) cccDNA formation inhibitors;
20 d) sAg secretion inhibitors; and
e) immunostimulators.

In one embodiment the invention provides a method for treating hepatitis B in an animal comprising administering to the animal, an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and at least one additional agent selected from the group consisting of:

- 25 a) reverse transcriptase inhibitors;
b) capsid inhibitors;
c) cccDNA formation inhibitors;
d) sAg secretion inhibitors; and
e) immunostimulators.

In one embodiment the invention provides a pharmaceutical composition comprising an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and at least one additional agent selected from the group consisting of:

- a) reverse transcriptase inhibitors;
- b) capsid inhibitors;
- c) cccDNA formation inhibitors;
- d) sAg secretion inhibitors; and
- e) immunostimulators.

In one embodiment the invention provides a kit comprising an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and at least one additional agent selected from the group consisting of:

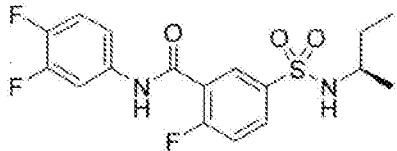
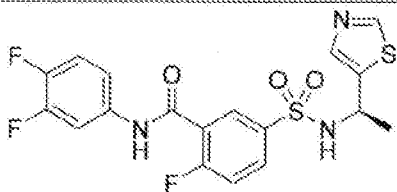
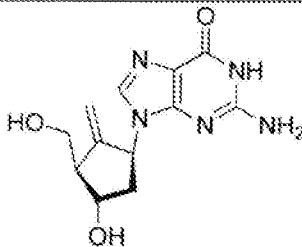
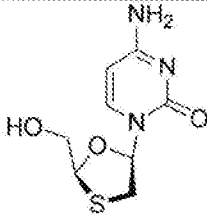
- a) reverse transcriptase inhibitors;
- b) capsid inhibitors;
- c) cccDNA formation inhibitors;
- d) sAg secretion inhibitors; and
- e) immunostimulators.

The ability of a combination of therapeutic agents to treat Hepatitis B may be determined using pharmacological models which are well known to the art.

The invention will now be illustrated by the following non-limiting Examples.

Examples

The following compounds are referenced in the Examples. Compounds 3-4 can be prepared using known procedures. International Patent Applications Publication Numbers WO2014/106019 and WO2013/006394 also describe synthetic methods that can be used to
 5 prepare Compounds 3-4.

Compound Number or Name	Structure
3	
4	
Entecavir	
Lamivudine	

Example 1

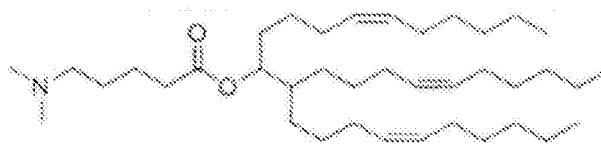
A mouse model of hepatitis B virus (HBV) was used to assess the anti-HBV effects of an
 10 immune stimulant and HBV-targeting siRNAs, both as independent treatments and in
 combination with each other.

The following lipid nanoparticle (LNP) formulation was used to deliver the HBV

siRNAs. The values shown in the table are mole percentages. The abbreviation DSPC means distearoylphosphatidylcholine.

PEG(2000)-C-DMA	Cationic lipid	Cholesterol	DSPC
1.1	55.0	33.0	11.0

5 The cationic lipid had the following structure (13):



A mixture of three siRNAs targeting the HBV genome were used. The sequences of the three siRNAs are shown below.

Sense Sequence (5'-3')	Antisense Sequence (5' - 3')
<u>C</u> CGUguGCACUuCGCu <u>u</u> CA <u>U</u> <u>U</u>	UGAAGCGAAGUgCACACgGU <u>U</u>
C <u>u</u> ggCUCAGUUUACuAgUG <u>U</u> <u>U</u>	CACUAgUAAACUgAgCCAGUU
<u>C</u> CCgAuCCAUA <u>C</u> ugCGgAA <u>U</u> <u>U</u>	UUCCGCAGUAUGgAUCCgCUU
lower case = 2'-O-methyl modification Underline = unlocked nucleobase analogue (UNA) moiety	

10 On Day -27, 10 micrograms of the plasmid pAAV/HBV1.2 (obtained from Dr. Pei-Jer Chen, originally described in Huang, LR et al., *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 2006, 103(47): 17862–17867)) was administered to C3H/HeN mice via hydrodynamic injection (HDI; rapid 1.3 mL injection into the tail vein). This plasmid carries a 1.2-fold
15 overlength copy of a HBV genome and expresses HBV surface antigen (HBsAg) amongst other HBV products. Serum HBsAg expression in mice was monitored using an enzyme immunoassay. Animals were sorted (randomized) into groups based on serum HBsAg levels such that a) all animals were confirmed to express HBsAg and b) HBsAg group means were similar to each other prior to initiation of treatments.

20 Animals were treated with immune stimulant as follows: On Day 0, 20 micrograms of high molecular weight polyinosinic:polycytidylic acid (poly(I:C)) was administered via HDI.

Animals were treated with lipid nanoparticle (LNP)-encapsulated HBV-targeting siRNAs as follows: On each of Days 0, 7 & 14, an amount of test article equivalent to 1 mg/kg siRNA was administered intravenously. A negative control group was included as the HBsAg expression level is not completely stable in this mouse model of HBV; the absolute concentration of serum HBsAg generally declines over time in individual animals. To demonstrate treatment-specific effects, the treated groups were compared against negative control animals.

The effect of the treatments was determined by collecting a small amount of blood on Days 0 (pre-treatment), 3, 7, 14 & 21 and analyzing it for serum HBsAg content. Samples were diluted as appropriate to generate values within the assay range of quantitation where possible. Individual values falling below the lower limit of quantitation (LLOQ) were set as one-half the LLOQ. Table 1 shows the treatment group mean (n=4 or 5; $\pm$ standard error of the mean) serum HBsAg concentration expressed as a percentage of the individual animal pre-treatment baseline value at Day 0.

The data demonstrate the degree of HBsAg reduction in response to the combination of HBV siRNA and poly(I:C), as well as the duration of the reductive effect. The combination of the two treatments resulted in greater effect than either treatment alone.

Table 1. Single and Combination Treatment Effect of Three HBV siRNAs and Immune Stimulant Poly(I:C) on Serum HBsAg in a Mouse Model of HBV Infection

	Day 0	Day 3	Day 7	Day 14	Day 21
Negative Control	100 $\pm$ 0	82 $\pm$ 4	65 $\pm$ 9	50 $\pm$ 10	36 $\pm$ 11
HBV siRNA	100 $\pm$ 0	0.2 $\pm$ 0.1	4.1 $\pm$ 1.3	1.6 $\pm$ 0.6	1.7 $\pm$ 0.6
HBV siRNA + Poly(I:C)	100 $\pm$ 0	0.5 $\pm$ 0.2	0.4 $\pm$ 0.2	0.3 $\pm$ 0.2	0.4 $\pm$ 0.2
Poly(I:C)	100 $\pm$ 0	6.1 $\pm$ 1.1	3.5 $\pm$ 1.1	3.9 $\pm$ 1.4	4.7 $\pm$ 2.3

Example 2

A mouse model of hepatitis B virus (HBV) was used to assess the anti-HBV effects of a small molecule inhibitor of HBV encapsidation (Compound 3) and HBV-targeting siRNAs, both as independent treatments and in combination with each other.

The following lipid nanoparticle (LNP) formulation was used to deliver the HBV siRNAs. The values shown in the table are mole percentages. The abbreviation DSPC means distearoylphosphatidylcholine.

PEG(2000)-C-DMA	Cationic lipid	Cholesterol	DSPC
1.6	54.6	32.8	10.9

The cationic lipid had the following structure (7):



A mixture of three siRNAs targeting the HBV genome were used. The sequences of the three siRNAs are shown below.

Sense Sequence (5'-3')	Antisense Sequence (5' - 3')
<u>CCGU</u> guGCACUaCGCu <u>CAUU</u>	UGAAGCGAAGUgCACACgGU <u>U</u>
<u>Cugg</u> CUCAGUUUACuAgUG <u>UU</u>	CACUAgUAAACUgAgCCAGUU
<u>GCCg</u> AuCCAUACugCGgAA <u>UU</u>	UUCCGCAgUAUGgAUCCgCUU
lower case = 2'-O-methyl modification	
Underline = unlocked nucleobase analogue (UNA) moiety	

On Day -7, 10 micrograms of the plasmid pHBV1.3 (as per Guidotti, L., et al., *Journal of Virology*, 1995, 69(10): 6158–6169) was administered to NOD.CB17-*Prkdc*^{scid}/J mice via hydrodynamic injection (HDI; rapid 1.6 mL injection into the tail vein). This plasmid carries a 1.3-fold overlenth copy of a HBV genome which, when expressed, generates hepatitis B viral particles including HBV DNA amongst other HBV products. As a readout of the anti-HBV effect of various treatments, serum HBV DNA concentration in mice was measured from total extracted DNA using a quantitative PCR assay (primer/probe sequences from Tanaka, Y., et al.,

Journal of Medical Virology, 2004, 72: 223-229).

Animals were treated with Compound **3** as follows: Starting on Day 0, a 50 mg/kg or 100 mg/kg dosage of Compound **3** was administered orally to animals on a twice-daily frequency for a total of fourteen doses between Days 0 and 7. Compound **3** was dissolved in a co-solvent formulation for administration. Negative control animals were administered either the co-solvent formulation alone, or saline. Animals were treated with lipid nanoparticle (LNP)-encapsulated HBV-targeting siRNAs as follows: On Day 0, an amount of test article equivalent to 0.1 mg/kg siRNA was administered intravenously. The HBV expression level is not completely stable in this mouse model of HBV; to demonstrate treatment-specific effects, here the treated groups are compared against negative control animals.

The effect of these treatments was determined by collecting blood on Days 0 (pre-treatment), 4 & 7 and analyzing it for serum HBV DNA content. Table 2 shows the treatment group mean (n=7 or 8; $\pm$ standard error of the mean) serum HBV DNA concentration expressed as a percentage of the individual animal pre-treatment baseline value at Day 0.

The data demonstrate the degree of serum HBV DNA reduction in response to the combination of Compound **3** and HBV siRNA, as well as the duration of the reductive effect. The combination of the two treatments resulted in greater effect than either treatment alone.

Table 2. Single and Combination Treatment Effect of Compound 3 and Three HBV siRNAs on Serum HBV DNA in a Mouse Model of HBV Infection

Treatment 1 (Oral)	Treatment 2 (IV)	Day 0	Day 4	Day 7
Saline	(none)	100 $\pm$ 0	69 $\pm$ 16	70 $\pm$ 14
Vehicle formulation	(none)	100 $\pm$ 0	56 $\pm$ 15	47 $\pm$ 9
Compound 3 , 50 mg/kg	(none)	100 $\pm$ 0	13 $\pm$ 4	33 $\pm$ 9
Compound 3 , 100 mg/kg	(none)	100 $\pm$ 0	8.6 $\pm$ 1.5	12 $\pm$ 5
(none)	HBV siRNA, 0.1 mg/kg	100 $\pm$ 0	9.4 $\pm$ 5.3	5.6 $\pm$ 1.2
Compound 3 , 50 mg/kg	HBV siRNA, 0.1 mg/kg	100 $\pm$ 0	1.9 $\pm$ 0.5	1.9 $\pm$ 0.4
Compound 3 , 100 mg/kg	HBV siRNA, 0.1 mg/kg	100 $\pm$ 0	0.77 $\pm$ 0.15	0.88 $\pm$ 0.28

Example 3

A mouse model of hepatitis B virus (HBV) was used to assess the anti-HBV effects of a small molecule inhibitor of HBV encapsidation (Compound 3), both as an independent treatment and in combination with the approved compound entecavir (ETV).

On Day -7, 10 micrograms of the plasmid pHBV1.3 (as per Guidotti, L., et al., *Journal of Virology*, 1995, 69(10): 6158–6169) was administered to NOD.CB17-*Prkdc*^{scid}/J mice via hydrodynamic injection (HDI; rapid 1.6 mL injection into the tail vein). This plasmid carries a 1.3-fold overlength copy of a HBV genome which, when expressed, generates hepatitis B viral particles including HBV DNA amongst other HBV products. As a readout of the anti-HBV effect of various treatments, serum HBV DNA concentration in mice was measured from total extracted DNA using a quantitative PCR assay (primer/probe sequences from Tanaka, Y., et al., *Journal of Medical Virology*, 2004, 72: 223-229).

Animals were treated with Compound 3 as follows: Starting on Day 0, a 100 mg/kg dosage of Compound 3 was administered orally to animals on a twice-daily frequency for a total of fourteen doses between Days 0 and 7. Compound 3 was dissolved in a co-solvent formulation for administration. Negative control animals were administered either the co-solvent formulation alone, or saline. Animals were treated with ETV as follows: Starting on Day 0, either a 100 ng/kg or a 300 ng/kg dosage of ETV was administered orally to animals on a once-daily frequency for a total of seven doses between Days 0 and 6. ETV was dissolved in DMSO to 2 mg/mL and then diluted in saline for administration. The HBV expression level is not completely stable in this mouse model of HBV; to demonstrate treatment-specific effects, here the treated groups are compared against negative control animals.

The effect of these treatments was determined by collecting blood on Days 0 (pre-treatment), 4 & 7 and analyzing it for serum HBV DNA content. Samples with Ct values below the lower limit of quantitation (LLOQ) were set to one-half LLOQ for calculation of group means. Table 3 shows the treatment group mean (n=5-8; $\pm$ standard error of the mean) serum HBV DNA concentration expressed as a percentage of the individual animal pre-treatment baseline value at Day 0.

The data demonstrate the degree of serum HBV DNA reduction in response to the combination of Compound 3 and ETV, as well as the duration of the reductive effect. The

combination of the two treatments resulted in greater effect than either treatment alone.

Table 3. Single and Combination Treatment Effect of Compound 3 and ETV on Serum HBV DNA in a Mouse Model of HBV Infection

Treatment 1	Treatment 2	Day 0	Day 4	Day 7
Saline	(none)	100 ± 0	67 ± 18	22 ± 8
Vehicle formulation	(none)	100 ± 0	41 ± 7	14 ± 3
Compound 3, 100 mg/kg	(none)	100 ± 0	9.3 ± 2.5	1.2 ± 0.3
(none)	ETV, 100 ng/kg	100 ± 0	21 ± 5	3.5 ± 0.7
(none)	ETV, 300 ng/kg	100 ± 0	1.6 ± 0.3	0.88 ± 0.31
Compound 3, 100 mg/kg	ETV, 100 ng/kg	100 ± 0	1.4 ± 0.4	0.48 ± 0.18
Compound 3, 100 mg/kg	ETV, 300 ng/kg	100 ± 0	0.70 ± 0.16	0.32 ± 0.07

5

Examples 4-6

In vitro Combination Study Goal:

To determine whether two drug combinations of a small molecule inhibitor of HBV encapsidation (Compound 3), Entecavir (ETV), a reverse transcriptase inhibitor of HBV polymerase and SIRNA-NP, an siRNA intended to facilitate potent knockdown of all viral mRNA transcripts and viral antigens, is additive, synergistic or antagonistic *in vitro* using an HBV cell culture model system.

10

Composition of SIRNA-NP:

SIRNA-NP is a lipid nanoparticle formulation of a mixture of three siRNAs targeting the HBV genome. The following lipid nanoparticle (LNP) formulation was used to deliver the HBV siRNAs in the experiments reported herein. The values shown in the table are mole percentages. The abbreviation DSPC means distearoylphosphatidylcholine.

15

PEG(20000)-C-DMA	Cationic lipid	Cholesterol	DSPC
1.6	54.6	32.8	10.9

20

The cationic lipid had the following structure (7):



The sequences of the three siRNAs are shown below.

Sense Sequence (5'-3')	Antisense Sequence (5' - 3')
rCrCmGrUmGmUrGrCrArCrUmUrCmGrC mUmUrCrArUrU	rUrGrArAmGrCmGrArArGmUmGrCrAmC rAmCmGrGrUrU
rCmUmGmGrCmUrCrArGmUrUmUrAmCmU rAmGmUmGrUrU	rCrArCrUrAmGmUrArArAmCrUmGrAmG rCmCrArGrUrU
rAmCrCmUrCmUrGmCrCmUrAmArUmCrA rUrCrUrCrUrU	rGrArGrArUrGmArUmUrArGrGmCrAmG rAmGrGrUrUrU
rN = RNA of base N	
mN = 2'O-methyl modification of base N	

5

***In vitro* Combination Experimental Protocol:**

In vitro combination studies were conducted using the method of Prichard and Shipman (Prichard MN, and Shipman C Jr., *Antiviral Research*, 1990, 14(4-5), 181-205; and Prichard MN, et. al., *MacSynergy II*). The AML12-HBV10 cell line was developed as described in
 10 Campagna et al. (Campagna et. al., *J. Virology*, **2013**, 87(12), 6931-6942). It is a mouse hepatocyte cell line stably transfected with the HBV genome, and which can express HBV pregenomic RNA and support HBV rcDNA (relaxed circular DNA) synthesis in a tetracycline-regulated manner. AML12-HBV10 cells were plated in 96 well tissue-culture treated microtiter plates in DMEM/F12 medium supplemented with 10% fetal bovine serum + 1% penicillin-
 15 streptomycin without tetracycline and incubated in a humidified incubator at 37°C and 5%CO₂ overnight. Next day, the cells were switched to fresh medium and treated with inhibitor A and inhibitor B, at concentration range in the vicinity of their respective EC₅₀ values, and incubated for a duration of 48 hrs in a humidified incubator at 37°C and 5%CO₂. The inhibitors were either diluted in 100% DMSO (ETV and Compound 3) or growth medium (SIRNA-NP) and the final
 20 DMSO concentration in the assay was ≤0.5%. The two inhibitors were tested both singly as well

as in combinations in a checkerboard fashion such that each concentration of inhibitor A was combined with each concentration of inhibitor B to determine their combination effects on inhibition of rcDNA production. Following a 48 hour-incubation, the level of rcDNA present in the inhibitor-treated wells was measured using a bDNA assay (Affymetrix) with HBV specific custom probe set and manufacturer's instructions. The RLU data generated from each well was calculated as % inhibition of the untreated control wells and analyzed using the MacSynergy II program to determine whether the combinations were synergistic, additive or antagonistic using the interpretive guidelines established by Prichard and Shipman as follows: synergy volumes <25 $\mu\text{M}^2\%$ (log volume <2) at 95% CI= probably insignificant; 25-50 $\mu\text{M}^2\%$ (log volume >2 and < 5) = minor but significant 50-100 $\mu\text{M}^2\%$ (log volume >5 and <9) = moderate, may be important *in vivo*; Over 100 $\mu\text{M}^2\%$ (log volume >9) = strong synergy, probably important *in vivo*; volumes approaching 1000 $\mu\text{M}^2\%$ (log volume >90) = unusually high, check data. Concurrently, the effect of inhibitor combinations on cell viability was assessed using replicate plates that were used to determine the ATP content as a measure of cell viability using the cell-titer glo reagent (Promega) as per manufacturer's instructions.

Example 4: *In vitro* combination of Compound 3 and Entecavir:

Compound 3 (concentration range of 2.5 μM to 0.01 μM in a 2-fold dilution series and 9 point titration) was tested in combination with Entecavir (concentration range of 0.075 μM to 0.001 μM in a 3-fold dilution series and 5 point titration). The average % inhibition in rcDNA and standard deviations of 4 replicates observed either with compound 3 or Entecavir treatments alone or in combination is shown in Table 1. The EC_{50} values of compound 3 and Entecavir are shown in Table 4. When the observed values of two inhibitor combination were compared to what is expected from additive interaction (Table 1) for the above concentration range, the combinations were found to be additive (Table 4) as per MacSynergy II analysis and using the interpretive criteria described above by Prichard and Shipman (1992).

Example 5: *In vitro* combination of Compound 3 and SIRNA-NP:

Compound 3 (concentration range of 2.5 μM to 0.01 μM in a 2-fold dilution series and 9 point titration) was tested in combination with SIRNA-NP (concentration range of 0.5 $\mu\text{g/mL}$ to

0.006 $\mu\text{g/mL}$ in a 3-fold dilution series and 5 point titration). The average % inhibition in rcDNA and standard deviations of 4 replicates observed either with Compound 3 or SIRNA-NP treatments alone or in combination is shown in Table 2. The EC_{50} values of Compound 3 and SIRNA-NP are shown in Table 4. When the observed values of two inhibitor combination were compared to what is expected from additive interaction (Table 2) for the above concentration range, the combinations were found to be additive (Table 4) as per MacSynergy II analysis and using the interpretive criteria described above by Prichard and Shipman (1992).

Example 6: *In vitro* combination of Entecavir and SIRNA-NP:

Entecavir (concentration range of 0.075 μM to 0.001 μM in a 3-fold dilution series and 5 point titration) was tested in combination with SIRNA-NP (concentration range of 0.5 $\mu\text{g/mL}$ to 0.002 $\mu\text{g/mL}$ in a 2-fold dilution series and 9 point titration). The average % inhibition in rcDNA and standard deviations of 4 replicates observed either with Entecavir or SIRNA-NP treatments alone or in combination is shown in Table 3. The EC_{50} values of Entecavir and SIRNA-NP are shown in Table 4. When the observed values of two inhibitor combination were compared to what is expected from additive interaction (Table 3) for the above concentration range, the combinations were found to be additive (Table 4) as per MacSynergy II analysis and using the interpretive criteria described above by Prichard and Shipman (1992).

Table 1: *In vitro* Combination of Entecavir (ETV) and Compound 3

[DRUG]	0	0.010	0.020	0.039	0.078	0.156	0.313	0.625	1.250	2.500	AVERAGE % INHIBITION of rcDNA	Compound 3 (μM)
ETV (μM)												
0.075	74.32	68.07	68.39	75.14	76.89	87.27	88.19	91.48	92.88	92.19		
0.025	63.25	64.7	58.68	63.39	64.91	75.73	86.18	89.9	91.41	93.94		
0.008	48.01	49.89	54.26	52.73	62.62	74.73	82.42	85.21	89.65	90.77		
0.003	18.71	11.06	25.23	22.45	46.04	57.94	77.01	85.49	86.6	90.86		
0.001	21.63	-4.69	-6.73	9.56	30.07	52.94	74.38	83.54	89.68	91.05		
0	0	-3.19	0.62	7.38	-1.81	35.53	70.96	80.76	86.73	90.47		

[DRUG]	0	0.010	0.020	0.039	0.078	0.156	0.313	0.625	1.25	2.5	STANDARD DEVIATION (%)	Compound 3 (μM)
ETV (μM)												
0.075	8.38	8.77	16.02	8.3	7.66	7.17	4.93	3.16	1.57	3.14		
0.025	13.67	10.43	13.89	13.82	12.17	7.61	3.09	2.63	1.7	0.94		
0.008	18.71	22.38	19.17	15.26	9.56	8.73	4.65	1.94	3.91	0.91		
0.003	35.13	24.05	20.09	22.35	16.24	10.98	7.82	4.84	3.77	3.64		
0.001	26.12	20.67	22.56	24.1	15.68	8.42	2.57	4.25	1.74	2.61		
0	0	42.74	22.32	20.39	23.53	22.08	7.85	2.94	1.46	2.2		
[DRUG]	0	0.010	0.020	0.039	0.078	0.156	0.3125	0.625	1.25	2.5	ADDITIVE INHIBITION	Compound 3 (μM)
ETV (μM)												
0.075	74.32	73.5	74.48	76.22	73.86	83.44	92.54	95.06	96.59	97.55		
0.025	63.25	62.08	63.48	65.96	62.58	76.31	89.33	92.93	95.12	96.5		
0.008	48.01	46.35	48.33	51.85	47.07	66.48	84.9	90	93.1	95.05		
0.003	18.71	16.12	19.21	24.71	17.24	47.59	76.39	84.36	89.21	92.25		
0.001	21.63	19.13	22.12	27.41	20.21	49.47	77.24	84.92	89.6	92.53		
0	0	-3.19	0.62	7.38	-1.81	35.53	70.96	80.76	86.73	90.47		
[DRUG]	0	0.010	0.020	0.039	0.078	0.156	0.313	0.625	1.25	2.5	SYNERGY PLOT (99.9%)	
ETV (μM)											Bonferrom Adj.	96%
0.075	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	SYNERGY	0
0.025	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	log volume	0
0.008	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1.28519		
0.003	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	ANTAGONISM	-1.29
0.001	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	log volume	-0.19
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		

Table 2: *In vitro* Combination of Compound 3 and SIRNA-NP

[DRUG]	0	0.010	0.020	0.039	0.078	0.156	0.313	0.625	1.250	2.5	AVERAGE % INHIBITION of reDNA	Compound d 3
SIRNA- NP												μ M
μ g/mL												
0.5	96.25	95.01	95.45	96.35	95.83	96.38	96.15	97.02	96.88	96.9		
0.167	92.38	90.74	91.26	92.35	90.9	94.41	95.28	95.7	96.58	96.63		
0.056	68.59	66.89	75.99	72.21	81.66	83.57	90.29	92.61	94.84	95.99		
0.019	29.18	30.74	29.09	33.68	43.8	68.05	83.12	87.88	93.48	94.35		
0.006	14.92	0.31	-4.48	6.12	19.44	49.81	78.77	85.37	90.66	92.09		
0	0	-1.98	-20.54	-16.95	20.07	37.11	59.39	79.86	88.12	89.67		
[DRUG]	0	0.010	0.020	0.039	0.078	0.156	0.313	0.625	1.25	2.5	STANDARD DEVIATION (%)	Compound d 3
SIRNA- NP												μ M
μ g/mL												
0.5	1.42	1.64	1.13	0.66	0.89	1.23	1.26	1.22	1.07	0.87		
0.167	3.23	3.02	1.2	3.25	1.88	1.47	1.05	0.87	0.9	1.16		
0.056	9.74	8.53	3.59	6.15	5.55	3.84	2.37	2.44	1.82	1.48		
0.019	31.44	16.24	17.69	9.21	14.48	11.22	6.35	5.11	1.1	1.48		
0.006	23.79	18.47	16.92	29.8	15.19	13.5	4.32	0.73	3.01	3.58		
0	0	16.14	29.67	32.34	27.28	28.62	12.94	5.47	5.83	2.5		
[DRUG]	0	0.010	0.020	0.039	0.078	0.156	0.313	0.625	1.25	2.5	ADDITIVE INHIBITION	Compound d 3
SIRNA- NP												μ M
μ g/mL												
0.5	96.25	96.18	95.48	95.61	97	97.64	98.48	99.24	99.55	99.61		
0.167	92.38	92.23	90.81	91.09	93.91	95.21	96.91	98.47	99.08	99.21		
0.056	68.59	67.97	62.14	63.27	74.89	80.25	87.24	93.67	96.27	96.76		
0.019	29.18	27.78	14.63	17.18	43.39	55.46	71.24	85.74	91.59	92.68		
0.006	14.92	13.24	-2.56	0.5	32	46.49	65.45	82.86	89.89	91.21		
0	0	-1.98	-20.54	-16.95	20.07	37.11	59.39	79.86	88.12	89.67		

[DRUG]	0	0.010	0.020	0.039	0.078	0.156	0.313	0.625	1.25	2.5	SYNERGY PLOT (99.9%)
<i>SIRNA-NP</i> <i>µg/mL</i>											<i>Bonferroni Adj.</i> 96%
0.500	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	SYNERGY 2.14
0.167	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	<i>log volume</i> 0.31
0.056	0	0	2.03531	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
0.019	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	ANTAGONISM 0
0.006	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0.10757	0	0	<i>log volume</i> 0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Table 3: *In vitro* Combination of Entecavir and SIRNA-NP

[DRUG]	0	0.002	0.004	0.008	0.016	0.032	0.063	0.125	0.250	0.500	AVERAGE % INHIBITION of rcDNA
<i>ETV</i> <i>µM</i>											<i>SIRNA-NP</i> <i>µg/mL</i>
0.075	74.9	77.52	75.42	79.02	85.16	86.59	92.73	95.09	96.6	96.66	
0.025	64.1	64.59	65.95	68.92	75.31	80.87	90.12	93.84	95.54	96.72	
0.008	37.88	42.67	48.08	54.27	70.87	75.26	85.26	92.63	95.6	96.12	
0.003	37.81	25.05	31.15	33.55	48.32	68.45	81.86	91	94.63	96.08	
0.001	9.06	11.49	1.57	22.41	33.41	61.88	77.03	90.37	93.93	95.14	
0	0	-8.95	-7.86	20.89	32.43	46.05	72.94	87.4	93.31	95.02	

[DRUG]	0	0.002	0.004	0.008	0.016	0.032	0.063	0.125	0.25	0.5	STANDARD DEVIATION (%)
<i>ETV</i> <i>µM</i>											<i>SIRNA-NP</i> <i>µg/mL</i>
0.075	5.4	2.5	2.4	3.43	3.56	4.39	1.42	0.92	1.29	1.35	
0.025	8.24	8.69	2.67	5.28	1.81	3.19	0.79	1.39	1.72	1.28	
0.008	5.43	9.21	4.64	3.19	7.48	2.52	0.29	2.33	0.59	0.95	
0.003	8.11	11.06	14.06	2.97	7.32	2.97	1.89	1.3	0.73	0.7	
0.001	9.35	11.3	8.13	9.32	7.82	3.96	3.32	1.43	0.81	1.16	
0	0	17.52	8.77	13.87	26.87	5.59	5.05	1.56	1.06	1.33	

[DRUG]	0	0.002	0.004	0.008	0.016	0.032	0.063	0.125	0.25	0.5	ADDITIVE INHIBITION	
ETV											SIRNA-NP	µg/mL
µM												
0.075	74.9	72.65	72.93	80.14	83.04	86.46	93.21	96.84	98.32	98.75		
0.025	64.1	60.89	61.28	71.6	75.74	80.63	90.29	95.48	97.6	98.21		
0.008	37.88	32.32	33	50.86	58.03	66.49	83.19	92.17	95.84	96.91		
0.003	37.81	32.34	32.92	50.8	57.98	66.45	83.17	92.16	95.84	96.9		
0.001	9.06	0.92	1.91	28.06	38.55	50.94	75.39	88.54	93.92	95.47		
0	0	-8.95	-7.86	20.89	32.43	46.05	72.94	87.4	93.31	95.02		

[DRUG]	0	0.002	0.004	0.008	0.016	0.032	0.063	0.125	0.25	0.5	SYNERGY PLOT (99.9%)	
ETV											Bonferroni Adj.	96%
µM												
0.075	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	SYNERGY	1.59
0.025	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	log volume	0.23
0.008	0	0	0	0	0	0.47668	1.11561	0	0	0		
0.003	0	0	0	7.47573	0	0	0	0	0	0	ANTAGONISM	-7.48
0.001	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	log volume	-1.07
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		

Table 4: Summary of results of *in vitro* combination studies in AML12-HBV10 cell culture system with rcDNA quantitation using bDNA assay:

Inhibitor A	Inhibitor B	Inhibitor A EC ₅₀ (µM)	Inhibitor B EC ₅₀ (µM or µg/mL)	Synergy Volume (µM ² %) [*]	Synergy Log Volume	Antagonism Volume (µM ² %) [*]	Antagonism Log Volume	Conclusion
Compound 3	Emecavir (ETV)	0.231	0.012	0	0	-1.29	-0.19	Additive
Compound 3	SIRNA- NP**	0.250	0.032	2.14	0.31	0	0	Additive
Emecavir (ETV)	SIRNA- NP**	0.012	0.031	1.59	0.23	-7.48	-1.07	Additive

^{*}at 99.9% confidence interval

^{**} µg/mL

Examples 7-9

***In vitro* Combination Study Goal:**

To determine the effects of combination treatment with two-compound combinations on the process of HBV DNA replication, cccDNA formation, and cccDNA expression and stability.

- 5 Compounds **3** and **4**, two small molecule inhibitors of HBV encapsidation; entecavir (ETV) and lamivudine (3TC), two FDA-approved reverse transcriptase inhibitorinhibitors of HBV polymerase; and **SIRNA-NP**, a lipid nanoparticle (LNP)-formulated siRNA inhibitor of viral mRNA and viral antigen expression were investigated. The studies were aimed at determining whether the combinations are additive, synergistic or antagonistic *in vitro* using an HBV cell
- 10 culture model system.

LNP formulation:

SIRNA-NP is a lipid nanoparticle formulation of a mixture of three siRNAs targeting the HBV genome. The following lipid nanoparticle (LNP) formulation was used to deliver the HBV siRNAs in the experiments reported herein. The values shown in the table are mole percentages.

- 15 The abbreviation DSPC means distearoylphosphatidylcholine.

PEG(2000)-C-DMA	Cationic lipid	Cholesterol	DSPC
1.6	54.6	32.8	10.9

The cationic lipid had the following structure (7):



siRNA

The sequences of the three siRNAs are shown below.

Sense Sequence (5'-3')	Antisense Sequence (5' - 3')
rCrCmGrUmGmUrGrCrArCrUmUrCmGrCm UmUrCrArUrU	rUrGrArAmGrCmGrArArGmUmGrCrAmCrA mCmGrGrUrU
rCmUmGmGrCmUrCrArGmUrUmUrAmCm UrAmGmUmGrUrU	rCrArCrUrAmGmUrArArAmCrUmGrAmGrC mCrArGrUrU
rAmCrCmUrCmUrGmCrCmUrAmArUmCrAr UrCrUrCrUrU	rGrArGrArUrGmArUmUrArGrGmCrAmGrAm GrGrUrUrU
rN = RNA of base N	
mN = 2'O-methyl modification of base N	

***In vitro* Combination Experimental Protocol:**

In vitro combination studies were conducted using a modification of the assay system described in Cai et al (Antimicrobial Agents Chemotherapy, 2012. Vol 56(8):4277-88). A previously developed HepDE19 cell culture system (Guo et al. J. Virology (2007) 81(22): 12472-12484) supports HBV DNA replication and cccDNA formation in a tetracycline (Tet)-regulated manner, and produces a detectable reporter molecule which is dependent upon the production and maintenance of cccDNA.

In the HepDE19 cell culture system, the reporters are the precore RNA and its cognate protein product, the secreted HBV "e antigen" (HBeAg). In HepDE19 cells, precore RNA and HBeAg are only produced from the cccDNA circular template, because the ORF of HBeAg and its 5' RNA leader are separated between the opposite ends of the integrated viral genome, and only become contiguous with the formation of cccDNA. Although an assay based on the HepDE19 cell culture system is effective for determining activity, the results of high throughput screening may be complicated because the HBeAg ELISA cross reacts with a viral HBeAg homologue, which is the core antigen (HBcAg) expressed largely in a cccDNA-independent fashion in HepDE19 cells. To overcome this complication, an alternative cell culture system (designated herein as DESHAe82 cell culture system and described in PCT/EP/2015/06838) has been developed which includes an in-frame HA epitope tag in the N-terminal coding sequence of

HBeAg in the transgene of DESHAe82 cells, without disrupting any cis-element critical for HBV replication, cccDNA transcription, and HBeAg secretion.

A chemiluminescence ELISA assay (CLIA) for the detection of HA-tagged HBeAg with HA antibody serving as capture antibody and HBeAg serving as detection antibody has been developed, eliminating the contaminating signal from HBcAg. The DESHAe82 cell line coupled with HA-HBeAg CLIA assay exhibits high levels of cccDNA synthesis and HA-HBeAg production and secretion, and high specific readout signals with low noise. In addition, a protocol for quantitative reverse transcription and polymerase chain reaction (qRT-PCR) that is specific for detection of precore RNA in either DE19 or DESHAe82 cells was developed and is also used for the detection of the cccDNA-dependent mRNA (precore RNA) that is translated to produce HBeAg or HA-HBeAg.

To test the compound combinations, DESHAe82 or DE19 cells (as indicated in examples) were plated in 96 well tissue-culture treated microtiter plates in DMEM/F12 medium supplemented with 10% fetal bovine serum + 1% penicillin-streptomycin with Tet, and incubated in a humidified incubator at 37°C and 5% CO₂ overnight. Next day, the cells were switched to fresh medium without Tet and treated with inhibitor A and inhibitor B, at concentration range in the vicinity of their respective EC₅₀ values, and incubated for a duration of 48h in a humidified incubator at 37°C and 5% CO₂. The inhibitors were either diluted in 100% DMSO (ETV, 3TC, Compound 3 and Compound 4) or growth medium (SIRNA-NP) and the final DMSO concentration in the assay was 0.5%. The two inhibitors were tested both singly as well as in combinations in a checkerboard fashion such that each test concentration of inhibitor A was combined with each test concentration of inhibitor B to determine their combination effects on inhibition of cccDNA formation and expression. Untreated negative control samples (0.5% DMSO or media only) were included on each plate in multiple wells. Following a 9 day-incubation, media was removed and cells were subjected to RNA extraction to measure the cccDNA-dependent precore mRNA level. Total cellular RNAs were extracted using a 96-well format total RNA isolation kit (MACHEREY-NAGEL, Cat. 740466.4) by following the instruction of manufacturer (vacuum manifold processing, two more extra washes of Buffer RA4). RNA samples were eluted in RNAase-free water. Quantitative real-time RT-PCR was performed with a Roche LightCycler480 and RNA Master Hydrolysis probe (Catalog

number 04991885001, Roche) using primers and conditions for specific detection of cccDNA-dependent precore RNA. GAPDH mRNA levels were also detected by standard methods and used to normalize the precore RNA levels. Inhibition of precore RNA levels, and therefore cccDNA expression, was calculated as % inhibition of the untreated control wells and analyzed using the Prichard-Shipman combination model using the MacSynergyII program (Prichard MN, Shipman C Jr. Antiviral Research, 1990. Vol 14(4-5):181-205; Prichard MN, Aseltine KR, and Shipman, C. MacSynergy II. University of Michigan 1992) to determine whether the combinations were synergistic, additive or antagonistic using the interpretive guidelines established by Prichard and Shipman as follows: synergy volumes $<25 \mu\text{M}^2$ (log volume <2) at 95% CI= probably insignificant; 25-50 (log volume >2 and <5) = minor but significant 50-100 (log volume >5 and <9) = moderate, may be important *in vivo*; Over 100 (log volume >9) = strong synergy, probably important *in vivo*; volumes approaching 1000 (log volume >90) = unusually high, check data.

Concurrently, the effect of inhibitor combinations on cell viability and proliferation was assessed in two ways: 1) Direct microscopic observation of test wells, and 2) using replicate plates seeded at 10-20 % cell density that, after 4 days, were assayed for intracellular ATP content using the Cell-Titer Glo reagent (Promega) as per manufacturer's instructions. Cell viability and density was calculated as a percentage of the untreated negative control wells.

Example 7: *In vitro* combination of Compound 3 and entecavir:

Compound 3 (concentration range of 10 μM to 0.0316 μM in a half-log dilution series and 6 point titration) was tested in combination with entecavir (concentration range of 0.010 μM to 0.00003 μM in a half-log, 3.16-fold) dilution series and 6 point titration. The antiviral activity of this combination is shown in Table 7a; synergy and antagonism volumes are shown in Table 7b. The combination results from 2 replicates of measurements of synergy and antagonism volumes according to Prichard and Shipman, and interpretation, are shown in Table 9d. In this assay system, this combination results in synergistic inhibition of precore RNA expression. No significant inhibition of cell viability or proliferation was observed by microscopy.

Table 7a. Antiviral Activity of Compound 3 and Entecavir Combination:
Average percent inhibition versus negative control (n=2 samples per data point)

<i>ETV, μM</i>	0.01	86.940	97.010	97.490	95.900	97.120	98.240	99.220
	0.003	81.510	61.730	69.510	62.570	98.550	97.820	97.690
	2							
	0.001	73.320	77.600	86.990	66.700	94.490	89.590	91.710
	0.000	69.090	78.290	58.730	55.160	92.360	91.290	93.110
	3							
	0.000	-8.990	39.460	55.700	44.430	45.680	73.420	91.580
	1							
	3E-05	-133.220	-313.960	20.870	49.930	8.740	68.590	72.590
	0	0.000	-26.280	-86.920	36.240	67.120	90.600	84.340
		0	0.032	0.100	0.317	1.001	3.165	10
Compounds	<i>Compound 3, μM</i>							

Table 7b. MacSynergy Volume Calculations Compound 3 and Entecavir Combination:
“Greater than additive” inhibition level at 99.99% confidence level

<i>ETV, μM</i>	0.01	0	3.75864	13.8041	1.86048	0	0	0.74344
	0.0032	0	0	0	0	0.87826	0	0
	0.001	0	9.05212	27.6452	0	0	0	0
	0.0003	0	0.40426	6.01171	0	0	0	0
	0.0001	0	75.9052	125.983	0	0	0	0
	3E-05	0	0	322.705	90.4025	0	0	0
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
		0	0.032	0.100	0.317	1.001	3.165	10
Compounds	<i>Compound 3, μM</i>							

Example 8: *In vitro* combination of Compound 4 and entecavir:

Compound 4 (concentration range of 10 μ M to 0.0316 μ M in a half-log dilution series and 6 point titration) was tested in combination with entecavir (concentration range of 0.010 μ M to 0.00003 μ M in a half-log, 3.16-fold dilution series and 6 point titration). The antiviral activity of this combination is shown in Table 8a; synergy and antagonism volumes are shown in Table 8b. Combination results from 2 replicates of measurements of synergy and antagonism volumes according to Prichard and Shipman and interpretation, are shown in Table 9d. In this assay

system, this combination results in synergistic inhibition of precore RNA expression. No significant inhibition of cell viability or proliferation was observed by microscopy.

Table 8a. Antiviral Activity Compound 4 and Entecavir Combination:

Average percent inhibition versus negative control (n=2 samples per data point)

<i>ETV, μM</i>	<i>0.01</i>	96	92.03	89.04	98.02	97.16	97.18	96.46
<i>0.003</i>		95.31	93.96	93.11	89.34	91.81	97.7	97.74
<i>2</i>								
<i>0.001</i>		80.83	94.74	94.25	95.49	98.64	98.14	98.7
<i>0.000</i>		39.01	95.61	92.25	97.73	97.85	97.68	95.26
<i>3</i>								
<i>0.000</i>		64.23	78.08	98.62	96.63	89.34	98.87	95.3
<i>1</i>								
<i>3E-05</i>		-32.56	-	58.53	97.04	97.7	96.9	95.1
			53.69					
<i>0</i>		0	-	66.78	94.67	93.92	97.88	97.53
			49.48					
		<i>0</i>	<i>0.032</i>	<i>0.100</i>	<i>0.317</i>	<i>1.001</i>	<i>3.165</i>	<i>10</i>
Compounds	<i>Compound 4, μM</i>							

Table 8b. MacSynergy Volume Calculations Compound 4 and Entecavir Combination:
"Greater than additive" inhibition level at 99.99% confidence interval

<i>ETV, μM</i>	<i>0.01</i>	0	-1.99	-9.63	-1.77	-2.6	-2.74	-3.44
<i>0.003</i>		0	0.97	-5.33	-10.41	-7.9	-2.2	-2.14
<i>2</i>								
<i>0.001</i>		0	23.4	0.62	-3.49	-0.19	-1.45	-0.83
<i>0.000</i>		0	86.78	12.51	0.98	1.56	-1.03	-3.23
<i>3</i>								
<i>0.000</i>		0	31.55	10.5	-1.46	-8.49	-0.37	-3.82
<i>1</i>								
<i>3E-05</i>		0	44.46	2.57	4.11	5.76	-0.29	-1.63
<i>0</i>		0	0	0	0	0	0	0
		<i>0</i>	<i>0.032</i>	<i>0.100</i>	<i>0.317</i>	<i>1.001</i>	<i>3.165</i>	<i>10</i>
Compounds	<i>Compound 4, μM</i>							

Example 9: *In vitro* combination of Compound 3 and SIRNA-NP:

Compound 3 (concentration range of 10 μ M to 0.0316 μ M in a half-log dilution series and 6 point titration) was tested in combination with SIRNA-NP (concentration range of 0.10 μ M to 0.000 μ g/ml in a half-log, 3.16-fold) dilution series and 6 point titration. The antiviral activity of this combination is shown in Table 9a; synergy and antagonism volumes are shown in Table 9b. The combination results from 4 replicates of measurements of synergy and antagonism volumes according to Prichard and Shipman, and interpretation, are shown in Table 9d. In this assay system, this combination results in synergistic inhibition of precore RNA expression. No significant inhibition of cell viability or proliferation was observed by microscopy or Cell-Titer Glo assay (Table 9c).

Table 9a. Antiviral Activity of Compound 3 and SIRNA-NP Combination:**Average percent inhibition versus negative control (n=4 samples per data point)**

Compound 3, μ M	10.00	76.180	76.580	93.330	97.170	94.670	97.120	98.640
	0							
	3.165	73.120	93.950	95.500	97.730	98.120	99.160	98.620
	1.001	88.510	95.740	97.340	97.880	98.620	99.410	98.150
	0.317	77.070	96.440	93.720	98.340	98.390	99.260	97.820
	0.100	71.330	87.960	91.490	87.110	97.700	97.790	95.920
	0.032	35.570	-56.280	64.870	86.080	90.920	86.330	89.560
	0	0.000	3.930	-46.460	35.730	87.370	72.720	99.230
		0	0.0003	0.001	0.003	0.010	0.032	0.100
Compounds	SIRNA-NP (μ g/mL)							

Table 9b. MacSynergy Volume Calculations Compound 3 and SIRNA-NP Combination: "Greater than additive" inhibition level at 99.99% confidence level

<i>Compound 3, μM</i>	<i>10.00</i>	<i>0.000</i>	<i>0.000</i>	<i>13.805</i>	<i>4.977</i>	<i>0.000</i>	<i>0.000</i>	<i>-0.061</i>
<i>0</i>								
<i>3.165</i>		<i>0.000</i>	<i>2.558</i>	<i>28.321</i>	<i>9.580</i>	<i>0.000</i>	<i>4.779</i>	<i>0.000</i>
<i>1.001</i>		<i>0.000</i>	<i>1.416</i>	<i>10.254</i>	<i>1.969</i>	<i>0.000</i>	<i>0.697</i>	<i>0.000</i>
<i>0.317</i>		<i>0.000</i>	<i>11.954</i>	<i>12.984</i>	<i>9.921</i>	<i>0.000</i>	<i>3.677</i>	<i>0.000</i>
<i>0.100</i>		<i>0.000</i>	<i>0.000</i>	<i>1.985</i>	<i>0.000</i>	<i>0.000</i>	<i>3.438</i>	<i>0.000</i>
<i>0.032</i>		<i>0.000</i>	<i>0.000</i>	<i>0.000</i>	<i>0.000</i>	<i>0.000</i>	<i>0.000</i>	<i>0.000</i>
<i>0</i>		<i>0.000</i>	<i>0.000</i>	<i>0.000</i>	<i>0.000</i>	<i>0.000</i>	<i>0.000</i>	<i>0.000</i>
		<i>0</i>	<i>0.0003</i>	<i>0.001</i>	<i>0.003</i>	<i>0.010</i>	<i>0.032</i>	<i>0.100</i>
Compounds	<i>SIRNA-NP (μg/mL)</i>							

Table 9c. Cytotoxicity of Compound 3 and SIRNA-NP Combination: Average percent of cell viability vs control

<i>Compound 3, μM</i>	<i>10.00</i>	<i>0</i>	<i>110.5</i>	<i>112.6</i>	<i>120.6</i>	<i>124.0</i>	<i>115.0</i>	<i>89.1</i>
<i>0</i>								
<i>3.165</i>		<i>105.9</i>	<i>116.1</i>	<i>119.5</i>	<i>120.6</i>	<i>117.3</i>	<i>95.1</i>	
<i>1.001</i>		<i>109.0</i>	<i>118.6</i>	<i>115.9</i>	<i>114.9</i>	<i>116.3</i>	<i>91.5</i>	
<i>0.317</i>		<i>110.0</i>	<i>111.8</i>	<i>119.7</i>	<i>117.2</i>	<i>109.7</i>	<i>90.3</i>	
<i>0.100</i>		<i>99.3</i>	<i>107.2</i>	<i>115.1</i>	<i>119.5</i>	<i>119.9</i>	<i>93.5</i>	
<i>0.032</i>		<i>99.3</i>	<i>107.7</i>	<i>122.6</i>	<i>127.1</i>	<i>123.0</i>	<i>85.9</i>	
Compounds		<i>0.0003</i>	<i>0.001</i>	<i>0.003</i>	<i>0.010</i>	<i>0.032</i>	<i>0.100</i>	

Table 9d. Summary of results of *in vitro* combination studies in DESHAe82 cell culture system with cccDNA-derived precore RNA quantitation by qRT-PCR

Inhibitor A (Compound Number)	Inhibitor B	Synergy Volume (μ M ² %)	Synergy Log Volume	Antagonism (μ M ² %)	Antagonism Log Volume	Interpretation
3	Entecavir (ETV)	679.15	169.58	0	0	Synergy
4	Entecavir (ETV)	225.77	56.44	-76.43	-19.11	Synergy
3	SIRNA-NP	122.31	30.54	-0.06	-0.01	Synergy

Example 10

The object of this example was to compare the anti-HBV activity of various combination treatments including Compound 3, a small molecule inhibitor of HBV encapsidation and SIRNA-NP, a lipid nanoparticle formulation encapsulating HBV-targeting siRNAs, as well as established HBV standard of care treatments: Entecavir (ETV), a nucleos(t)ide analogue inhibiting HBV DNA polymerase activity (de Man RA *et al.*, *Hepatology*, 34(3), 578-82 (2001)) and pegylated interferon alpha-2a (pegINF α -2a), which limits viral dissemination via a type 1 interferon receptor activation (Marcellin *et al.*, *N Engl J Med.*, 51(12), 1206-17 (2004)). Potency of these combinations was compared to monotherapy treatments with Compound 3, SIRNA-NP and ETV alone, as well as to a negative control treatment condition with Vehicle for Compound 3.

This work was conducted in a well-established humanized liver chimeric mouse model of chronic hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection (Tsuge *et al.*, *Hepatology*, 42(5), 1046-54 (2005)). A persistent level of HBV infection was established in the animals prior to the treatment phase which started at Day 0. Test articles dosages were as follows: Compound 3, oral 100 mg/kg twice daily; SIRNA-NP, intravenous 3 mg/kg every 2 weeks; ETV, oral 1.2 μ g/kg daily; pegINF α -2a, subcutaneous 30 μ g/kg twice a week.

The anti-HBV effects were assessed based on serum HBsAg levels using the GS HBsAg EIA 3.0 enzyme linked immunosorbent assay kit from Bio-Rad Laboratories as per manufacturer instructions; and serum HBV DNA levels measured from total extracted DNA using a quantitative PCR assay (primer/probe sequences from Tanaka *et al.*, *Journal of Medical Virology*, 72, 223-229 (2004)).

Dual and triple combination treatments resulted in more anti-viral activity as exemplified by stronger reductions in serum HBV DNA levels relative to the monotherapy treatments investigated. Particularly, at Day 28, serum HBV DNA levels were reduced over 2.5 log₁₀ upon treatment with a combination of Compound 3 and SIRNA-LNP or Compound 3 and pegINF α -2a, and 2 log₁₀ upon treatment with a combination of Compound 3 and ETV, as compared to the 1.0 to 1.5 log₁₀ reductions observed with monotherapy treatments of ETV or Compound 3 or SIRNA-LNP. Triple combination treatment with Compound 3 and SIRNA-NP and ETV or Compound 3 and SIRNA-NP and pegINF α -2a demonstrated slightly improved effect on HBV

DNA levels relative to the dual combination treatments out to Day 28. The ability of SIRNA-NP to inhibit hepatitis B protein (antigen) production, as exemplified by serum HBsAg levels, was maintained (when co-administered in combination with the other antiviral treatments).

5 Table 10a: Effect of Combinatorial and Monotherapy Treatments on Serum HBV DNA Levels

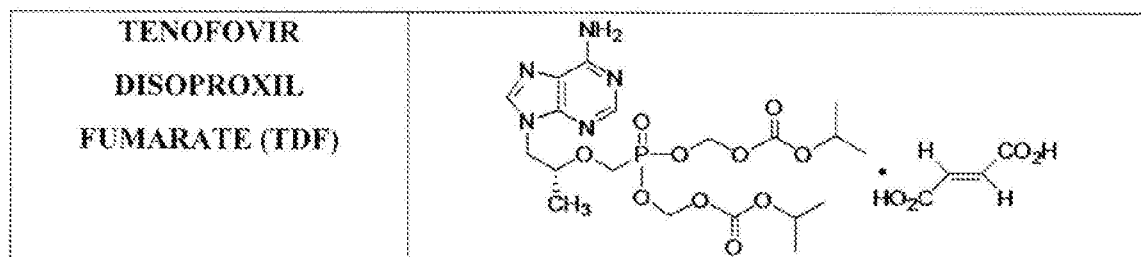
Group No.	Treatment	Serum HBV DNA (Copies/mL $\pm$ SEM)				
		Day 0	Day 7	Day 14	Day 21	Day 28
1	Vehicle Control for Compound 3	1.50E+08 $\pm$ 1.82E+07	1.65E+08 $\pm$ 2.78E+07	1.45E+08 $\pm$ 1.50E+07	2.13E+08 $\pm$ 3.01E+07	2.13E+08 $\pm$ 2.63E+07
2	Compound 3	1.70E+08 $\pm$ 2.16E+07	1.33E+07 $\pm$ 1.85E+06	1.28E+07 $\pm$ 1.78E+06	1.02E+07 $\pm$ 4.24E+06	1.17E+07 $\pm$ 5.20E+06
3	SIRNA-NP	1.88E+08 $\pm$ 4.52E+07	5.18E+06 $\pm$ 1.50E+06	6.40E+06 $\pm$ 9.67E+05	2.24E+06 $\pm$ 5.51E+05	6.86E+06 $\pm$ 2.26E+06
4	Compound 3 + SIRNA-NP	1.56E+08 $\pm$ 2.25E+07	8.64E+06 $\pm$ 2.48E+06	2.02E+06 $\pm$ 5.08E+05	4.36E+05 $\pm$ 1.18E+05	3.64E+05 $\pm$ 1.00E+05
5	Compound 3 + SIRNA-NP + ETV	1.66E+08 $\pm$ 1.33E+07	6.82E+06 $\pm$ 1.64E+06	1.57E+06 $\pm$ 2.19E+05	3.70E+05 $\pm$ 8.96E+04	1.68E+05 $\pm$ 4.00E+04
6	Compound 3 + SIRNA-NP + pegIFN α - 2a	2.42E+08 $\pm$ 5.70E+07	7.75E+06 $\pm$ 2.03E+06	1.79E+06 $\pm$ 4.53E+05	5.48E+05 $\pm$ 1.12E+05	2.90E+05 $\pm$ 2.52E+04
7	Compound 3 + ETV	1.96E+08 $\pm$ 2.46E+07	1.70E+07 $\pm$ 4.13E+06	5.22E+06 $\pm$ 1.06E+06	2.34E+06 $\pm$ 4.06E+05	1.80E+06 $\pm$ 3.67E+05
8	Compound 3 + pegIFN α - 2a	1.67E+08 $\pm$ 2.54E+07	8.50E+06 $\pm$ 1.64E+06	1.39E+06 $\pm$ 3.71E+05	4.98E+05 $\pm$ 1.25E+05	3.01E+05 $\pm$ 8.11E+04
9	ETV	1.48E+08 $\pm$ 1.18E+07	2.35E+07 $\pm$ 2.47E+06	1.38E+07 $\pm$ 1.65E+06	1.35E+07 $\pm$ 6.45E+05	9.33E+06 $\pm$ 3.20E+05

Table 10b: Effect of Combinatorial and Monotherapy Treatments on Serum HBsAg Levels

Group No.	Treatment	Serum HBsAg (IU/mL $\pm$ SEM)	
		Day 0	Day 21
1	Vehicle Control for Compound 3	2761 $\pm$ 388	4065 $\pm$ 338
2	Compound 3	2965 $\pm$ 616	4158 $\pm$ 355
3	SIRNA-NP	3352 $\pm$ 812	44 $\pm$ 11
4	Compound 3 + SIRNA-NP	3436 $\pm$ 498	58 $\pm$ 8
5	Compound 3 + SIRNA-NP + ETV	2795 $\pm$ 309	96 $\pm$ 24
6	Compound 3 + SIRNA-NP + pegIFN α -2a	3965 $\pm$ 734	37 $\pm$ 4
7	Compound 3 + ETV	3965 $\pm$ 779	5822 $\pm$ 1490
8	Compound 3 + pegIFN α -2a	3154 $\pm$ 521	3621 $\pm$ 683
9	ETV	2649 $\pm$ 282	2975 $\pm$ 629

Example II**5 *In vitro* Combination Study Goal:**

To determine whether two drug combinations of a small molecule inhibitor of HBV encapsidation (Compound 3) and tenofovir (TDF), a nucleoside analog inhibitor of HBV polymerase is additive, synergistic or antagonistic *in vitro* using an HBV cell culture model system.



In vitro Combination Experimental Protocol:

In vitro combination studies were conducted using the method of Prichard and Shipman

(Prichard MN, and Shipman C Jr., *Antiviral Research*, 1990, 14(4-5), 181-205; and Prichard

MN, et. al., *MacSynergy II*). HepDE19 cell culture system is a HepG2 (human hepatocarcinoma) derived cell line that supports HBV DNA replication and cccDNA formation in a tetracycline (Tet)-regulated manner and produces HBV rcDNA and a detectable reporter molecule dependent on the production and maintenance of cccDNA (Guo et al 2007, *J. Virol* 81:12472-12484).

HepDE19 (50,000 cells/well) were plated in 96 well collagen-coated tissue-culture treated

microtiter plates in DMEM/F12 medium supplemented with 10% fetal bovine serum, 1% penicillin-streptomycin and 1 µg/ml tetracycline and incubated in a humidified incubator at 37°C and 5%CO₂ overnight. Next day, the cells were switched to fresh medium without tetracycline

and incubated for 4 hrs at 37°C and 5%CO₂. The cells were then switched to fresh medium without tetracycline and treated with inhibitor A and inhibitor B, at concentration range in the

vicinity of their respective EC₅₀ values, and incubated for a duration of 7 days in a humidified incubator at 37°C and 5%CO₂. The inhibitors tenofovir (TDF) and Compound 3 were diluted in 100% DMSO and the final DMSO concentration in the assay was ≤0.5%. The two inhibitors

were tested both singly as well as in combinations in a checkerboard fashion such that each concentration of inhibitor A was combined with each concentration of inhibitor B to determine

their combination effects on inhibition of rcDNA production. Following a 7 day-incubation of cells with compound combinations, the level of rcDNA present in the inhibitor-treated wells was measured using a Quantigene 2.0 bDNA assay kit (Affymetrix, Santa Clara, CA) with HBV specific custom probe set and manufacturers instructions. The plates were read using a Victor luminescence plate reader (PerkinElmer Model 1420 Multilabel counter) and the relative luminescence units (RLU) data generated from each well was calculated as % inhibition of the

untreated control wells and analyzed using the MacSynergy II program to determine whether the combinations were synergistic, additive or antagonistic using the interpretive guidelines established by Prichard and Shipman as follows: synergy volumes $<25 \mu\text{M}^2\%$ (log volume <2) at 95% CI= probably insignificant; $25\text{-}50 \mu\text{M}^2\%$ (log volume >2 and <5) = minor but significant
5 $50\text{-}100 \mu\text{M}^2\%$ (log volume >5 and <9) = moderate, may be important *in vivo*; Over $100 \mu\text{M}^2\%$ (log volume >9) = strong synergy, probably important *in vivo*; volumes approaching $1000 \mu\text{M}^2\%$ (log volume >90) = unusually high, check data. The RLU data from the single compound treated cells were analyzed using XL-Fit module in Microsoft Excel to determine EC_{50} values using a 4-parameter curve fitting algorithm. Concurrently, the effect of compounds on cell
10 viability was assessed using replicate plates, plated at a density of 5,000 cells/well and incubated for 4 days, to determine the ATP content as a measure of cell viability using the cell-titer glo reagent (CTG; Promega Corporation, Madison, WI) as per manufacturer's instructions.

In vitro combination of Compound 3 and tenofovir (TDF);

Compound 3 (concentration range of $3 \mu\text{M}$ to $0.037 \mu\text{M}$ in a 3-fold dilution series and 5
15 point titration) was tested in combination with tenofovir (concentration range of $1 \mu\text{M}$ to $0.004 \mu\text{M}$ in a 2-fold dilution series and 9 point titration). The average % inhibition in rcDNA and standard deviations of 4 replicates observed either with compound 3 or TDF treatments alone or in combination is shown in Table 11a. The EC_{50} values of compound 3 and TDF determined in this experiment are shown in Table 11b. When the observed values of two inhibitor combination
20 were compared to what is expected from additive interaction (Table 11b) for the above concentration range based on the individual contributions of each compound, the combinations were found to be additive (Table 11a and b) as per MacSynergy II analysis and using the interpretive criteria of Prichard and Shipman (1992) as described above.

Table 11a. Antiviral Activity of Compound 3 and TDF Combination in HepDE19 cell culture model with rcDNA quantitation using bDNA assay: Average percent inhibition versus negative control (n=4 samples per data point)

[DRUG]	0	0.004	0.008	0.016	0.031	0.063	0.125	0.250	0.500	1.000	AVERAGE % INHIBITION OF RCDNA	TDF MM
COMPOUND 3 MM												
3	92.69	93.87	96.01	94.57	94.17	94.9	91.84	94.52	97.28	97.37		
1	83.1	87.98	90.45	91.88	89.45	89.19	94.59	98.01	95.27	97.85		
0.333	34.59	47.53	50.34	45.48	64.69	70.4	83.95	92.17	94.85	96.43		
0.111	-50.41	-47.53	-31.05	-44.75	13.61	50.62	62.26	82.59	92.55	97.17		
0.037	-63.72	-41.93	-56.49	-41.81	-0.16	29.03	56.86	82.15	90.11	95.65		
0	0	-47.04	-39.77	-25.59	36.74	37.05	65.03	84.2	91.21	95.51		
[DRUG]	0	0.004	0.008	0.016	0.031	0.063	0.125	0.250	0.500	1.000	STANDARD DEVIATION (%)	TDF MM
COMPOUND 3 MM												
3	4.43	3.98	1.83	2.37	3.8	1.33	5.51	4.26	1.13	1.29		
1	8.73	5.43	2.73	1.92	4.32	5.01	2.65	0.84	4.58	1.21		
0.333	40.25	28.76	24.89	31.4	20.3	18.56	11.45	4.78	1.74	3.48		
0.111	96.02	90.94	47.03	93.37	79.11	18.14	25.2	8.38	5.39	1.34		
0.037	93	74.31	74.12	109.98	55.89	47.04	33.37	11.7	8.7	2.09		
0	0	100.83	88.61	115.48	19.81	57.3	23.34	11.86	7	3.21		
[DRUG]	0	0.004	0.008	0.016	0.031	0.063	0.125	0.250	0.500	1.000	ADDITIVE INHIBITION	TDF MM
COMPOUND 3 MM												
3	92.69	89.25	89.78	90.82	95.38	95.4	97.44	98.85	99.36	99.67		
1	83.1	75.15	76.38	78.78	89.31	89.36	94.09	97.33	98.51	99.24		
0.333	34.59	3.82	8.58	17.85	58.62	58.82	77.13	89.67	94.25	97.06		
0.111	-50.41	-121.16	-110.23	-88.9	4.85	5.32	47.4	76.24	86.78	93.25		
0.037	-63.72	-140.73	-128.83	-105.62	-3.57	-3.06	42.75	74.13	85.61	92.65		
0	0	-47.04	-39.77	-25.59	36.74	37.05	65.03	84.2	91.21	95.51		

[DRUG]	0	0.004	0.008	0.016	0.031	0.063	0.125	0.250	0.500	1.000	SYNERGY PLOT (99.9%)	TDF
COMPOUND 3											BONFERRONI ADJ.	MM
MM												96%
3	0	0	0.20747	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	SYNERGY	12.07
1	0	0	5.08557	6.78128	0	0	0	0	0	0	LOG VOLUME	1.73
0.333	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		
0.111	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	ANTAGONISM	0
0.037	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	LOG VOLUME	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		

Table 11b: Summary of results of *in vitro* combination studies in HepDE19 cell culture system with reDNA quantitation using bDNA assay:

INHIB A	INHIB B	INHIBITOR A EC ₅₀ (MM)	INHIBITOR B EC ₅₀ (MM)	SYNERGY VOLUME (μ M ² %) [*]	SYNERGY LOG VOLUME	ANTAGONISM VOLUME (μ M ² %) [*]	ANTAGONISM LOG VOLUME	CONCLUSION
CPMD 3	TDF	0.454	0.088	12.07	1.73	0	0	ADDITIVE

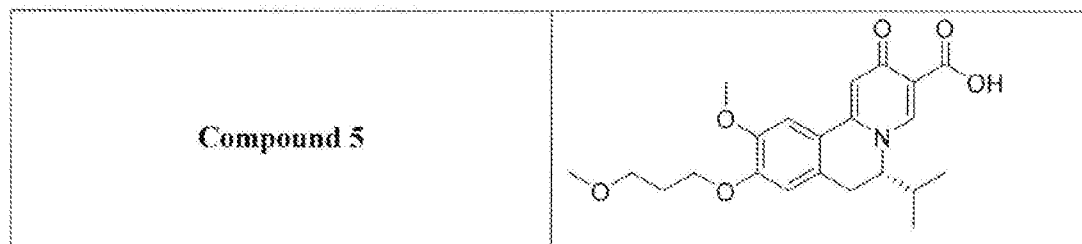
^{*}AT 99.9% CONFIDENCE INTERVAL

Example 12

In vitro Combination Study Goal:

To determine whether two compounds in a combination treatment would result in a synergistic, antagonistic, or additive effect in a hepatitis B virus (HBV) transfected cell culture. The compound, Compound 5, is a small molecule inhibitor of hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg) secretion and SIRNA-NP is a lipid nanoparticle (LNP) encapsulated RNAi inhibitor, which targets viral mRNA and viral antigen expression. An HBV cell culture system was used to determine the effect of combination treatment in this *in vitro* study.

Small Molecule Chemical Structure:



LNP formulation:

SIRNA-NP is a lipid nanoparticle formulation of a mixture of three siRNAs targeting the HBV genome. The following lipid nanoparticle (LNP) product was used to deliver the HBV siRNAs in the experiments reported herein. The values shown in the table are mole percentages. Distearoylphosphatidylcholine is abbreviated as DSPC.

PEG(2000)-C-DMA	Cationic lipid	Cholesterol	DSPC
1.6	54.6	32.8	10.9

10 The cationic lipid had the following structure:



siRNA

The sequences of the three siRNAs are shown below.

	Sense Sequence (5'-3')	Antisense Sequence (5' - 3')
	rCrCmGrUmGmUrGrCrArCrUmUrCmGrC mUmUrCrArUrU	rUrGrArAmGrCmGrArArGmUmGrCr AmCrAmCmGrGrUrU
	rCmUmGmGrCmUrCrArGmUrUmUrAmC mUrAmGmUmGrUrU	rCrArCrUrAmGmUrArArAmCrUmGr AmGrCmCrArGrUrU
	rAmCrCmUrCmUrGmCrCmUrAmArUmCr ArUrCrUrCrUrU	rGrArGrArUrGmArUmUrArGrGmCr AmGrAmGrGrUrUrU
rN = RNA of base N		
mN = 2'O-methyl modification of base N		

5 ***In vitro* Combination Experimental Protocol:**

In vitro combination studies were conducted using the method of Prichard and Shipman (Prichard MN, and Shipman C Jr., Antiviral Research, 1990, 14(4-5), 181-205; and Prichard MN, et. al., *MacSynergy II*). The HepG2.2.15 cell culture system is a cell line derived from human hepatoblastoma HepG2 cells that have been stably transfected with the adw2- subtype HBV genome as previously explained in Sells et al. (Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U. S. A, 1987. Vol 84:1005–1009). HepG2.2.15 cells secrete Dane-like viral particles, produce HBV DNA, and also produce the viral proteins, hepatitis B e antigen (HBeAg) and hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg).

To test the compound combinations, HepG2.2.15 (30,000 cells/well) were plated in 96 well tissue-culture treated microtiter plates in RPMI + L-Glutamine medium supplemented with 1% penicillin-streptomycin, 20 µg/mL geneticin (G418), 10% fetal bovine serum, and incubated in a humidified incubator at 37 °C and 5% CO₂ overnight. The next day, the cells were replenished with fresh medium followed by the addition of Compound 5, dissolved in 100% DMSO, at a concentration range of 0.1 µM to 0.000015 µM. siRNA-NP was dissolved in 100% RPMI medium and added to cells at a concentration range of 2.5 nM to 0.025 nM. The microtiter cell plates were incubated for a duration of 6 days in a humidified incubator at 37 °C and 5%

CO₂. The serial dilutions spanned concentration ranges respective to the EC₅₀ value of each compound, with the final DMSO concentration of the assay being 0.5%. In addition to combination testing of the compounds in a checkerboard fashion, both Compound 5 and SIRNA-NP were also tested alone.

5 Untreated positive control samples (0.5% DMSO in media) were included on each plate in multiple wells. Following a 6 day-incubation, media was removed from treated cells for use in an HBsAg chemiluminescence immunoassay (CLIA) (Autobio Diagnostics, Cat No. CL0310-2). An HBsAg standard curve was generated to verify that the levels of HBsAg quantification were within the detection limits of the assay. The remaining inhibitor-treated cells were assessed for
10 cytotoxicity by determination of the intracellular adenosine triphosphate (ATP) using a Cell-Titer Glo reagent (Promega) as per manufacturers instructions and by microscopic analysis of the cells throughout the duration of inhibitor treatment. Cell viability was calculated as a percentage of the untreated positive control wells.

 The plates were read using an EnVision multimode plate reader (PerkinElmer Model
15 2104). The relative luminescence units (RLU) data generated from each well was used to calculate HBsAg levels as percent inhibition of the untreated positive control wells and analyzed using the Prichard-Shipman combination model using the MacSynergyII program (Prichard MN, Shipman C Jr. Antiviral Research, 1990. Vol 14(4-5):181-205; Prichard MN, Aseltine KR, and Shipman, C. MacSynergy II. University of Michigan 1992) to determine whether the
20 combinations were synergistic, additive or antagonistic using the interpretive guidelines established by Prichard and Shipman as follows: synergy volumes <25 $\mu\text{M}^2\%$ (log volume <2) at 95% CI= probably insignificant; 25-50 (log volume >2 and < 5) = minor but significant 50-100 (log volume >5 and <9) = moderate, may be important *in vivo*; Over 100 (log volume >9) = strong synergy, probably important *in vivo*; volumes approaching 1000 (log volume >90) =
25 unusually high, check data. The RLU data from the single compound treated cells were analyzed using XL-Fit module in Microsoft Excel to determine EC₅₀ values using a 4-parameter curve fitting algorithm.

 Compound 5 (concentration range of 0.1 μM to 0.000015 μM in a half-log, 3.16-fold dilution series and 8-point titration) was tested in combination with SIRNA-NP (concentration
30 range of 2.5 nM to 0.025 nM in a half-log, 3.16-fold dilution series and 6-point titration). The

combination results were completed in triplicate with each assay consisting of 4 technical repeats. The measurements of synergy and antagonism volumes according to Prichard and Shipman, and interpretation, are shown in Table 12e. The antiviral activity of this combination is shown in Table 12a1, 12a2, and 12a3; synergy and antagonism volumes are shown in Table 12b1, 12b2, and 12b3. The additive inhibition activity of this combination is shown in Table 12d1, 12d2, and 12d3. In this assay system, the combination results in additive inhibition of HBsAg secretion. No significant inhibition of cell viability or proliferation was observed by microscopy or Cell-Titer Glo assay (Table 12c1, 12c2, and 12c3).

Trial 1

Table 12a1. Antiviral Activity of Compound 5 and SIRNA-NP Combination:

Average percent inhibition versus negative control (n=4 samples per data point)

SIRNA-NP, μ M	0.0025	86.52	85.69	87.32	88.31	89.63	90.42	90.86	89.67	91.42	86.52
	0.00079	77.54	77.93	78.77	80.65	85.38	87.61	88.97	89.29	90.33	77.54
	0.00025	58.33	51.65	58.01	66.99	71.54	78.68	82.99	85.31	85.23	58.33
	7.9E-05	32.28	31.08	41.8	56.24	67.66	74.98	81.22	85.88	85	32.28
	2.5E-05	23.11	23.81	29.3	46.54	60.92	70.18	78.45	80.94	82.53	23.11
	0	10.26	15.09	25.37	37.06	55.53	66.43	75.94	80.86	79.69	10.26
	0	1.00E-06	3.16E-06	1.0E-05	3.17E-05	0.0001	0.000316	0.001	0.00316	0.1	
Compound	Compound 5, μ M										

Table 12b1. MacSynergy Volume Calculations of Compound 5 and SIRNA-NP

Combination: 99.99% confidence interval (Bonferroni Adj. 96%)

SIRNA-NP, μ M	0.0025	0	0	0	0	0	0	-0.47	-0.92	0	0
	0.00079										-0.7
		0	0	0	0	0	0	-1.51	0	0	9
	0.00025	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	7.9E-05	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	2.5E-05	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Antagonism -3.60 Log volume -0.92	0	1.00E-06	3.16E-06	1.0E-05	3.17E-05	0.0001	0.000316	0.001	0.00316	0.1	
Compound	Compound 5, μ M										

Table 12c1. Cytotoxicity of Compound 5 and SIRNA-NP Combination:

Average percent of cell viability vs control

SIRNA-NP, μ M	0.0025	103	97	102	102	100	101	105	109	107	123
	0.0007										
	9	103	92	99	96	105	106	101	109	101	98
	0.0002										
	5	101	47	122	107	59	109	100	115	104	104
	7.9E-05	104	128	120	109	152	107	109	106	95	101
	2.5E-05	95	100	111	107	95	96	100	102	98	115
	0	100	113	109	99	100	92	111	112	110	136
		0	1.00E-06	3.16E-06	1.0E-05	3.17E-05	0.0001	0.00031	0.00	0.0031	0.1
								6	1	6	
Compound	Compound 5, μ M										

5 Table 12d1. Antiviral Activity of Compound 5 and SIRNA-NP Combination:

Additive percent inhibition versus negative control (n=4 samples per data point)

SIRNA-NP, μ M	0.0025	83.86	85.52	86.3	87.95	89.84	92.82	94.58	96.12	96.91	96.72
	0.0007										
	9	73.95	76.62	77.88	80.56	83.6	88.42	91.26	93.73	95.01	94.71
	0.0002										
	5	49.38	54.57	57.02	62.22	68.14	77.49	83.01	87.82	90.31	89.72
	7.9E-05	23.95	31.75	35.43	43.24	52.13	66.18	74.47	81.7	85.44	84.55
	2.5E-05	12.12	21.14	25.38	34.42	44.69	60.92	70.5	78.86	83.18	82.15
	0	0	10.26	15.09	25.37	37.06	55.53	66.43	75.94	80.86	79.69
		0	1.00E-06	3.16E-06	1.0E-05	3.17E-05	0.0001	0.00031	0.001	0.0031	0.1
								6		6	
Compound	Compound 5, μ M										

Trial 2

Table 12a2. Antiviral Activity of Compound 5 and SIRNA-NP Combination:

Average percent inhibition versus negative control (n=4 samples per data point)

SIRNA-NP, μ M	0.0025								87.0		84.0
		77.7	81.95	80.51	81.58	84.83	83.97	84.26	8	86.03	1
	0.0007	69.0									86.8
	9	6	70.21	58.33	75.38	79.52	83.66	85.31	87.4	86.12	3
	0.0002	43.8							82.5		86.4
	5	4	47.41	58.38	58.03	67.92	76.4	79.69	7	84.39	6
	7.9E-05	25.1									87.0
	4	44.78	40.61	46.87	58.4	70.57	73.31	84.9	88.29		5
Avg % Inhibition	2.5E-05	14.3							78.7		86.1
	8	27.11	38.49	45.73	55.88	65.5	77.37	1	83.62		4
	0	0	6.2	22.15	31.5	43.61	50.19	69.21	79.5		82.3
		0	1.00E-06	3.16E-06	1.0E-05	3.17E-05	0.0001	0.00031	0.00	0.0031	0.1
								6	1	6	
Compound	Compound 5, μ M										

5

Table 12b2. MacSynergy Volume Calculations of Compound 5 and SIRNA-NP

Combination: 99.9% confidence interval (Bonferroni Adj. 96%)

SIRNA-NP, μ M	0.0025	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	0.0007										
	9	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-3.6	0
	0.0002										
	5	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	7.9E-05	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	2.5E-05	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
SYNERGY 0 Log volume 0 Antagonism -3.62 Log volume -0.9		0	1.00E-06	3.16E-06	1.0E-05	3.17E-05	0.0001	0.00031	0.00	0.0031	0.1
Compound	Compound 5, μ M										

Table 12c2. Cytotoxicity of Compound 5 and SIRNA-NP Combination:

Average percent of cell viability vs control

SIRNA-NP, μ M	0.0025	88	90	74	76	82	77	74	75	90	108
	0.0007										
	9	77	72	67	68	65	67	68	65	71	110
	0.0002										
	5	79	75	66	73	71	67	64	63	74	114
	7.9E-05	88	75	73	76	55	68	68	64	79	116
	2.5E-05	90	84	68	74	69	71	66	66	80	110
	0	100	94	92	113	90	98	109	108	112	133
		0	1.00E-06	3.16E-06	1.0E-05	3.17E-05	0.0001	0.00031	0.001	0.0031	0.1
Compound	Compound 5, μ M										

5 **Table 12d2. Antiviral Activity of Compound 5 and SIRNA-NP Combination:**

Additive percent inhibition versus negative control (n=4 samples per data point)

SIRNA-NP, μ M	0.0025								95.4		96.0
		77.7	79.08	82.64	84.72	87.43	88.89	93.13	5	96.28	7
	0.0007	69.0							93.6		94.5
	9	6	70.98	75.91	78.81	82.55	84.59	90.47	9	94.84	4
	0.0002	43.8							88.5		90.0
	5	4	47.32	56.28	61.53	68.33	72.03	82.71	4	90.63	9
	7.9E-05	9.82	15.41	29.79	38.23	49.15	55.08	72.23	81.5		84.0
	2.5E-05	23.0							84.2		86.4
		2	27.79	40.07	47.27	56.59	61.66	76.3	9	87.16	2
	0	0	6.2	22.15	31.5	43.61	50.19	69.21	79.5		82.3
		0	6.2	22.15	31.5	43.61	50.19	69.21	9	83.32	6
		0	1.00E-06	3.16E-06	1.0E-05	3.17E-05	0.0001	0.00031	0.001	0.0031	0.1
Compound	Compound 5, μ M										

Trial 3

Table 12a3. Antiviral Activity of Compound 5 and SIRNA-NP Combination:

Average percent inhibition versus negative control (n=4 samples per data point)

SIRNA-NP, μ M	0.0025	89.7							98.8		98.5
		4	92.07	93.25	94.5	95.52	96.92	98.19	7	99	9
	0.0007	76.4							97.4		96.7
	9	8	81.81	84.52	87.38	89.73	92.94	95.86	2	97.71	7
	0.0002	52.4							94.7		93.4
	5	6	63.24	68.71	74.5	79.24	85.73	91.63	8	95.37	7
	7.9E-05	33.5							92.6		90.8
	2	2	48.6	56.24	64.34	70.97	80.05	88.29	9	93.52	7
Avg % Inhibition	2.5E-05	19.2							91.1		88.9
	6	6	37.57	46.86	56.69	64.75	75.77	85.78	3	92.14	1
	0	0	22.68	34.18	46.36	56.34	69.99	82.39	1	90.26	6
		0	1.00E-06	3.16E-06	1.0E-05	3.17E-05	0.0001	0.00031	0.00	0.0031	0.1
									6	1	6
Compound	Compound 5, μ M										

5

Table 12b3. MacSynergy Volume Calculations of Compound 5 and SIRNA-NP

Combination: 99.99% confidence interval (Bonferroni Adj. 96%)

SIRNA-NP, μ M	0.0025	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	0.0007										
	9	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	0.0002										
	5	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	7.9E-05										
	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	2.5E-05										
SYNERGY 0 Log volume 0 Antagonism 0 Log volume 0	6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
		0	1.00E-06	3.16E-06	1.0E-05	3.17E-05	0.0001	0.00031	0.00	0.0031	0.1
Compound	Compound 5, μ M										

Table 12c3. Cytotoxicity of Compound 5 and SIRNA-NP Combination:

Average percent of cell viability vs control

SIRNA-NP, μ M	0.0025	97	116	112	124	112	126	124	122	122	95
	0.00079	103	115	112	123	109	118	125	127	126	124
	0.00025	115	135	129	140	119	135	129	148	136	122
	7.9E-05	113	129	131	133	130	139	131	138	146	130
	2.5E-05	113	153	140	140	131	134	137	147	143	124
	0	100	131	127	140	131	128	131	141	127	99
		0	1.00E-06	3.16E-06	1.0E-05	3.17E-05	0.0001	0.00031	0.001	0.0031	0.1
Compound	Compound 5, μ M										

5 Table 12d3. Antiviral Activity of Compound 5 and SIRNA-NP Combination:

Additive percent inhibition versus negative control (n=4 samples per data point)

SIRNA-NP, μ M	0.0025	89.74	92.07	93.25	94.5	95.52	96.92	98.19	98.87	99	98.59
	0.0007										
	9	76.48	81.81	84.52	87.38	89.73	92.94	95.86	97.42	97.71	96.77
	0.0002										
	5	52.46	63.24	68.71	74.5	79.24	85.73	91.63	94.78	95.37	93.47
	7.9E-05	33.52	48.6	56.24	64.34	70.97	80.05	88.29	92.69	93.52	90.87
	2.5E-05	19.26	37.57	46.86	56.69	64.75	75.77	85.78	91.13	92.14	88.91
Additive % Inhibition	0	0	22.68	34.18	46.36	56.34	69.99	82.39	89.01	90.26	86.26
		0	1.00E-06	3.16E-06	1.0E-05	3.17E-05	0.0001	0.00031	0.001	0.0031	0.1
Compound	Compound 5, μ M										

Table 12e. Summary of results of *in vitro* combination studies in HepG2.2.15 cell culture system with HBsAg quantitation by CLIA

Trial 1	Compound 5 EC ₅₀ (μM)	SIRNA-NP EC ₅₀ (nM)	Synergy Volume (μM ² %)	Synergy Log Volume	Antagonism (μM ² %)	Antagonism Log Volume	Interpretation
1	0.002	0.00026	0	0	-3.69	-0.92	Additive
2	0.005	0.00035	0	0	-3.62	-0.9	Additive
3	0.002	0.00020	0	0	0	0	Additive

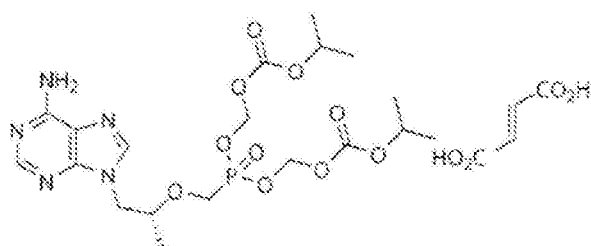
*at 99.9% confidence interval

5 Example 13

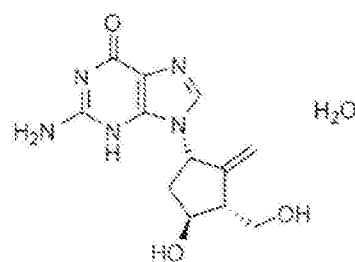
In vitro Combination Study Goal

A goal of this study was to determine whether two drug combinations of tenofovir (in the form of the prodrug tenofovir disoproxil fumarate, or TDF, a nucleotide analog inhibitor of HBV polymerase), or entecavir (in the form of entecavir hydrate, or ETV, a nucleoside analog inhibitor of HBV polymerase), and SIRNA-NP, an siRNA intended to facilitate potent knockdown of all viral mRNA transcripts and viral antigens, is additive, synergistic or antagonistic *in vitro* using an HBV cell culture model system.

Chemical Structures of tenofovir and entecavir:



Tenofovir Disoproxil Fumarate (TDF)



Entecavir (ETV) Hydrate

Composition of SIRNA-NP:

SIRNA-NP is a lipid nanoparticle formulation of a mixture of three siRNAs targeting the HBV genome. The following lipid nanoparticle (LNP) formulation was used to deliver the HBV siRNAs. The values shown in the table are mole percentages. The abbreviation DSPC means

distearoylphosphatidylcholine, and the PEG was PEG 2000.

PEG(2000)-C-DMA	Cationic lipid	Cholesterol	DSPC
1.6	54.6	32.8	10.9

The cationic lipid had the following structure:



The sequences of the three siRNAs are shown below.

	Sense Sequence (5'-3')	Antisense Sequence (5' - 3')
	rCrCmGrUmGmUrGrCrArCrUmUrCmG rCmUmUrCrArUrU	rUrGrArAmGrCmGrArArGmUmGrCrAm CrAmCmGrGrUrU
	rCmUmGmGrCmUrCrArGmUrUmUrAmC mUrAmGmUmGrUrU	rCrArCrUrAmGmUrArArAmCrUmGrAm GrCmCrArGrUrU
	rAmCrCmUrCmUrGmCrCmUrAmArUmC rArUrCrUrCrUrU	rGrArGrArUrGmArUmUrArGrGmCrAm GrAmGrGrUrUrU
	rN = RNA of base N	
	mN = 2'O-methyl modification of base N	

***In vitro* Combination Experimental Protocol:**

In vitro combination studies were conducted using the method of Prichard and Shipman (Prichard MN, Shipman C, Jr., *Antiviral Res.*, 14, 181-205 (1990)). The HepDE19 cell line was developed as described in Guo *et al.* (Guo *et al.*, *J Virol.*, 81, 12472-12484 (2007)). It is a human hepatoma cell line stably transfected with the HBV genome, and which can express HBV pregenomic RNA and support HBV rcDNA (relaxed circular DNA) synthesis in a tetracycline-regulated manner. HepDE19 cells were plated in 96 well tissue-culture treated microtiter plates in DMEM/F12 medium supplemented with 10% fetal bovine serum + 1% penicillin-streptomycin without tetracycline and incubated in a humidified incubator at 37°C and 5%CO₂ overnight. The next day, the cells were switched to fresh medium and treated with inhibitor A

and inhibitor B, at concentration range in the vicinity of their respective EC_{50} values, and incubated for a duration of 7 days in a humidified incubator at 37°C and 5% CO_2 . The inhibitors were either diluted in 100% DMSO (ETV and TDF) or growth medium (SIRNA-NP) and the final DMSO concentration in the assay was $\leq 0.5\%$. The two inhibitors were tested both singly as well as in combinations in a checkerboard fashion such that each concentration of inhibitor A was combined with each concentration of inhibitor B to determine their combination effects on inhibition of rcDNA production. Following a 48 hour-incubation, the level of rcDNA present in the inhibitor-treated wells was measured using a bDNA assay (Affymetrix) with HBV specific custom probe set and manufacturers instructions. The RLU data generated from each well was calculated as % inhibition of the untreated control wells and analyzed using the MacSynergy II program to determine whether the combinations were synergistic, additive or antagonistic using the interpretive guidelines established by Prichard and Shipman as follows: synergy volumes $< 25 \mu M^2\%$ (log volume < 2) at 95% CI= probably insignificant; $25-50 \mu M^2\%$ (log volume > 2 and < 5) = minor but significant $50-100 \mu M^2\%$ (log volume > 5 and < 9) = moderate, may be important *in vivo*; Over $100 \mu M^2\%$ (log volume > 9) = strong synergy, probably important *in vivo*; volumes approaching $1000 \mu M^2\%$ (log volume > 90) = unusually high, check data. Concurrently, the effect of inhibitor combinations on cell viability was assessed using replicate plates that were used to determine the ATP content as a measure of cell viability using the Cell-TiterGlo reagent (Promega) as per manufacturer's instructions.

Results and Conclusion:

In vitro combination of TDF and SIRNA-NP:

TDF (concentration range of 1.0 μM to 0.004 μM in a 2-fold dilution series and 10 point titration) was tested in combination with SIRNA-NP (concentration range of 25 ng/mL to 0.309 ng/mL in a 3-fold dilution series and 5 point titration). The average % inhibition in rcDNA and standard deviations of 4 replicates observed either with TDF or SIRNA-NP treatments alone or in combination is shown in Table 13a. The EC_{50} values of TDF and SIRNA-NP are shown in Table 13c. When the observed values of two inhibitor combination were compared to what is expected from additive interaction (Table 13a) for the above concentration range, the combinations were found to be additive (Table 13c) as per MacSynergy II analysis and using the

interpretive criteria described above by Prichard and Shipman (Prichard MN. 1992. MacSynergy II, University of Michigan).

In vitro combination of entecavir and SIRNA-NP:

Entecavir (concentration range of 4.0 nM to 0.004 μ M in a 2-fold dilution series and 10 point titration) was tested in combination with SIRNA-NP (concentration range of 25 ng/mL to 0.309 μ g/mL in a 3-fold dilution series and 5 point titration). The average % inhibition in rcDNA and standard deviations of 4 replicates observed either with ETV or SIRNA-NP treatments alone or in combination is shown in Table 13b. The EC₅₀ values of ETV and SIRNA-NP are shown in Table 13c. When the two inhibitors were combined in the above concentration range, the concentration combinations were found to be additive as per MacSynergy II analysis and using the interpretive criteria described above by Prichard and Shipman (1992).

Table 13a: *In vitro* Combination of Tenofovir Dipovoxil Fumarate and SIRNA-NP

[DRUG]	0	0.004	0.008	0.015	0.031	0.063	0.12	0.25	0.50	1.00	AVERAGE % INHIBITION
SIRNA-NP											
ng/mL											TDF (μ M)
25	93.58	98.91	94.48	93.31	93.59	95.77	92.3	95.9	94.1	94.9	
8.333	88.63	88.81	88.05	92.79	92.07	92.97	98.5	95.7	94.6	97.8	
2.778	80.6	72.21	73.62	74.95	84.77	96.4	91.2	93.5	95.6	97.5	
0.926	44.48	36.07	41.83	44.94	60.31	76.81	82.6	91.3		97.0	
0.309	26.53	13.83	9.48	26.5	32.64	53.59	73.5	82.7	90.8	96.6	
0	0	-5.27	0.67	2.82	8.57	41.67	66.0	81.5	90.8	94.5	
							8	5	5	5	

[DRUG]	0	0.00380	0.0076	0.0156	0.0312	0.062	0.12	0.25	0.5	1	STANDARD DEVIATION (%)
SIRNA-NP											
ng/mL											TDF (μ M)
25	8.23	5.78	2.1	5.38	4.44	2.77	5.57	2.31	3.88	1.7	
8.333	5.38	4.15	5.01	5.32	3.97	1.82	2.89	3.61	3.13	2.62	
2.778	13.12	12	6.21	14.12	12.42	5.28	3.1	1.92	1.12	1.34	
0.926	18.91	9.73	29.33	16.45	21.14	5.83	6.39	2.16	2.29	1.2	
0.309	12.04	43.02	33.58	19.89	52.19	25.65	17.4	8.61	5.58	1.79	
0	0	23.5	44.95	26.95	54.17	21.72	15.9	6	1.64	0.98	

[DRUG]	0	0.00390	0.0078	0.0156	0.0312	0.062	0.12	0.25	0.5	1	ADJUTIVE INHIBITION	
SIRNA-NP											TDF (μM)	
ng/mL												
25	93.58	93.24	93.62	93.76	94	96.26	97.6	98.8	99.4	99.6		
8.333	88.63	88.03	88.71	88.95	89.38	91.37	96.1	97.9	98.9	99.3		
2.778	80.6	79.58	80.73	81.15	81.87	86.68	93.4	96.4	98.2	98.6		
0.926	44.48	41.55	44.85	46.05	48.13	67.82	81.3	89.7	94.9	96.9		
0.309	26.53	22.66	27.02	28.6	31.36	57.14	75.0	86.4	93.2	96.9		
0	0	-5.27	0.67	2.82	6.57	41.67	68.0	81.5	90.8	94.5		

[DRUG]	0	0.00	0.01	0.02	0.03	0.06	0.10	0.25	0.5	1	SYNERGY PLOT (98.9%)	
SIRNA-NP											Boufford's Adj. 98.9%	
ng/mL												
25.0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	SYNERGY 0	
8.333	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	log volume 0	
2.778	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		
0.926	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	ANTAGONISM 0	
0.309	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	log volume 0	
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		

5

Table 13b: *In vitro* Combination of Entecavir and SIRNA-NP

[DRUG]	0	0.016	0.031	0.063	0.125	0.250	0.50	1.00	2.00	4.00	AVERAGE % INHIBITION	
SIRNA-NP											ETV (nM)	
ng/mL												
25	94.31	92.38	93.86	94.7	93.85	95.21	92.8	95.4	94.2	95.6		
8.333	90.41	91.44	91.71	89.9	90.91	92.34	94.0	94.3	95.3	95.2		
2.778	76.74	74.61	62.61	75.26	79.3	82.04	86.3	90.7	92.0	91.1		
0.926	46.84	39.15	41.37	50.29	48.66	49.94	62.3	72.8	82.8	86.4		
0.309	28.68	37.78	12.18	5.93	8.2	18.18	27.5	56.6	73.1	78.2		
0	0	-43.72	-50.87	-30.25	-23.47	-21.25	10.2	41.7	58.3	68.9		

[DRUG]	0	0.01562	0.0312	0.062	0.125	0.25	0.5	1	2	4	STANDARD DEVIATION (%)
SIRNA- NP											ETV (nM)
ng/mL											
25	1.67	6.18	2.63	3.7	2.4	3.53	4.89	3.65	3.15	1.22	
8.333	2.86	5.93	5.85	8.53	2.5	1.58	2.18	3.07	1.44	2.47	
2.778	12.28	9.55	32.22	11.86	8.31	4.95	4.87	2.25	2.64	6.79	
0.926	17.81	22.17	35.16	8.83	25.87	17.46	17.5	7.78	4.36	5.46	
0.309	12.26	11.58	25.87	26.27	30.31	21.45	38.9	12.8	12.2		
							3	9	7	5.88	
0	0	47.73	38.3	41.27	25.17	56.81	55.1	33.5	17.7	11.4	
							3	5	5	8	
[DRUG]	0	0.01562	0.0312	0.062	0.125	0.25	0.5	1	2	4	ADDITIVE INHIBITION
SIRNA- NP											ETV (nM)
ng/mL											
25	94.31	91.82	91.48	92.59	92.97	93.1	93.7	96.6	97.5	98.2	
							3	8	3	5	
8.333	90.41	85.22	85.61	87.51	88.16	88.17	89.4	94.4	95.0	97.1	
							3	1	1	2	
2.778	76.74	66.57	65.09	69.7	71.28	71.8	74.3	86.4	89.3	93.0	
							6	4	1	2	
0.926	46.64	23.6	20.22	30.75	34.36	35.54	41.4	59.0	77.8	84.0	
							21.3	56.4			
0.309	25.66	-2.5	-7.03	7.1	11.94	13.52	8	3	70.3	78.5	
							-				
0	0	-43.72	-50.07	-30.26	-23.47	-21.25	10.2	41.7	58.3	89.8	
							4	1	5	9	
[DRUG]	0	0.02	0.03	0.06	0.13	0.25	0.50	1	2	4	SYNERGY PLOT (59.8%)
SIRNA- NP											Bonferroni Adj. 95%
ng/mL											
25.0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	SYNERGY 0
8.333	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	log volume 0
2.778	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
0.926	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	ANTAGONISM 0
0.309	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	log volume 0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Table 13c: Summary of results of *in vitro* combination studies in AML12-HBV10 cell culture system with rcDNA quantitation using bDNA assay;

Inhibitor A	Inhibitor B	Inhibitor A EC ₅₀ (ng/mL)	Inhibitor B EC ₅₀	Synergy Volume (μM ² %)*	Synergy Log Volume	Antagonism Volume (μM ² %)*	Antagonism Log Volume	Conclusion
SIRNA-NP	Tenofovir (TDF, μM)	0.947	0.089	0	0	0	0	Additive
SIRNA-NP	Entecavir (ETV, nM)	0.906	1.780	5.37	0.77	0	0	Additive

*at 99.9% confidence interval

Example 14

5 The following compound is referenced in the Examples. Compound **20** can be prepared using known procedures. For example, Compound **20** can be prepared as described in International Patent Application Publication Number WO2015113990.

Compound Number or Name	Structure
20	

A mouse model of hepatitis B virus (HBV) was used to assess the anti-HBV effects of a
10 small molecule inhibitor of sAg production and HBV-targeting siRNAs (**SIRNA-NP**), both as
independent treatments and in combination with each other.

The following lipid nanoparticle (LNP) formulation was used to deliver the HBV siRNAs. The values shown in the table are mole percentages. The abbreviation DSPC means distearoylphosphatidylcholine.

15

PEG(2000)-C-DMA	Cationic lipid	Cholesterol	DSPC
1.6	54.6	32.8	9

The cationic lipid had the following structure:



1E11 viral genomes of AAV1.2 (described in Huang, LR et al. *Gastroenterology*, 2012, 142(7):1447-50) was administered to C57/Bl6 mice via tail vein injection. This viral vector
 5 contains a 1.2-fold overlength copy of the HBV genome and expresses HBV surface antigen (HBsAg) amongst other HBV products. Serum HBsAg expression in mice was monitored using an enzyme immunoassay. Animals were sorted (randomized) into groups based on serum HBsAg levels such that a) all animals were confirmed to express HBsAg and b) HBsAg group means were similar to each other prior to initiation of treatments.

10 Animals were treated with Compound **20** as follows: Starting on Day 0, a 3.0 mg/kg dosage of Compound **20** was administered orally to animals on a twice-daily frequency for a total of 56 doses between Days 0 and 28. Compound **20** was dissolved in a co-solvent formulation for administration. Negative control animals were administered either the co-solvent formulation alone, or were not treated with any test article. Animals were treated with lipid nanoparticle
 15 (LNP)-encapsulated HBV-targeting siRNAs as follows: On Day 0, an amount of test article equivalent to 0.3 mg/kg siRNA was administered intravenously. The HBsAg expression levels for each treatment were compared against the Day 0 (pre-dose) values for that group.

The effect of these treatments was determined by collecting blood on Days 0 (pre-treatment), 7, 14, and 28 and analyzing it for serum HBsAg content. Table 14 shows the
 20 treatment group mean (n=5 (n=4 for siHBV and vehicle combination treatment); $\pm$ standard error of the mean) serum HBsAg concentration expressed as a percentage of the individual animal pre-treatment baseline value at Day 0.

The data demonstrate the degree of serum HBsAg reduction in response to the combination of Compound **20** and HBV siRNA, both alone and in combination. At every time
 25 point tested, the combination of Compound **20** and HBV siRNA treatments yielded reduction of serum HBsAg that was as good or better than any of the individual monotherapy treatments.

Table 14. Single and Combination Treatment Effect of Compound 20 and Three HBV

siRNAs on Serum HBV sAg in a Mouse Model of HBV Infection

Treatment 1 (Oral)	Treatment 2 (IV)	D0	D7	D14	D21	D28
None	None	100 ± 0	80 ± 12	100 ± 18	72 ± 15	72 ± 16
Vehicle	None	100 ± 0	37 ± 8	62 ± 9	112 ± 66	127 ± 67
Compound 20	None	100 ± 0	7 ± 1	8 ± 2	7 ± 2	8 ± 2
Vehicle	HBV siRNA	100 ± 0	1 ± 0	3 ± 2	19 ± 9	45 ± 25
Compound 20	HBV siRNA	100 ± 0	1 ± 0	2 ± 1	5 ± 2	8 ± 2

*Examples 15-24***5 Materials and Methods for Studies in Primary Human Hepatocytes****Animals**

FRG mice were purchased from Yecuris (Tualatin, OR, USA). Detailed information of the mice is shown in the table below. The study was approved by the WuXi IACUC (Institutional Animal Care and Use Committee, IACUC protocol R20160314-Mouse). Mice are allowed to acclimate to the new environment for 7 days. The mice were monitored for general health and any signs of physiological and behavioral anomaly daily.

15

20

FRG mouse technical data

Cage ID	Mouse ID	Donor ID	Date of birth	Date of transplant	Albumin (µg/ml) pre-shipment	Gender	BW (g) - preshipment
1	37094	HHM3 0017	12/15/2015	01/28/2016	4887	male	24.9
2	37211	HHM2 7018	01/03/2016	02/24/2016	4284	male	23.5
3	37258	HHM2 7018	01/06/2016	02/24/2016	4282	male	29.4
4	37611	HHM3 0017	02/22/2016	04/06/2016	6627	male	25.3
5	37955	HHM2 7018	03/31/2016	05/19/2016	5990	male	25.5
6	37900	HHM2 7018	03/23/2016	05/04/2016	4802	male	27.1
7	37976	HHM2 7018	03/20/2016	05/04/2016	4520	male	24.7

Test articles

Compounds **3**, **22**, **23**, **24** and **25** were provided by Arbutus Biopharma. Peg-interferon alfa-2a (Roche, 180 µg/0.5ml) was provided by WuXi. TAF, Entecavir, Tenofovir, Lamivudine and TDF were provided in DMSO solution by WuXi. Information on the compounds is shown in the table below.

Information of the test articles

Compound name	Vial ID	M.Wt.	Size	Vendor
25	031NH	401.19	3.1 mg	Arbutus
3	031NR	386.4	3.8 mg	Arbutus
22	031NP	398.4	2.9 mg	Arbutus
23	031NT	379.3	2.9 mg	Arbutus
24	031NV	396.8	2.6 mg	Arbutus
Compound name	Vendor	Catalog No.	Stock Conc.	
Peginterferon alfa-2a	Roche		180 µg/0.5ml (5040000 IU/ml)	Provide by WuXi
TAF	SelleckChem	S7856	10 mM	Provide by WuXi
TDF	Shanghai Sphechem Co., Ltd.		20 mM	Provide by WuXi

5

10

Viruses

D type HBV was concentrated from HepG2.2.15 culture supernatants. The information of the viruses is shown in the table below.

Information of the HBV

Virus ID	Lot#	HBV titer in serum (GE*/ml)	Genotype	Source
HBV_2.2.15	HBV20160407	2.00E+09 GE/ml	D (Genebank ID: U95551)	HepG2.2.15 supernatants
HBV_2.2.15	B161011	1.9E+09 GE/ml	D (Genebank ID: U95551)	HepG2.2.15 supernatants
HBV_2.2.15	B161129	1.5E+09 GE/ml	D (Genebank ID: U95551)	HepG2.2.15 supernatants

*GE, HBV genome equivalent.

Reagents

The major reagents used in the study were QIAamp 96 DNA Blood Kit (QIAGEN # 51161), FastStart Universal Probe Master (Roche # 04914058001), Cell Counting Kit-8 (CCK-8) (Biolite # 35004), HBeAg ELISA kit (Antu # CL 0312) and HBsAg ELISA kit (Antu # CL 0310).

Instruments

The major instruments used in the study were BioTek Synergy 2, SpectraMax (Molecular Devices), 7900HT Fast Real-Time PCR System (ABI) and Quantistudio 6 Real-Time PCR System (ABI).

Harvest of primary human hepatocytes (PHH)

The mouse liver perfusion was applied to isolate PHHs. The isolated hepatocytes were further purified by Percoll. The cells were resuspended with culture media and seeded into the

96-well plates (6×10^4 cell/well) or 48-well plates (1.2×10^5 cell/well). The PHHs were infected with a D type HBV one day post seeding (day 1).

Culture and treatment of PHHs.

On day 2, the test compounds were diluted and added into the cell culture plates. The culture media containing the compounds were refreshed every other day. The cell culture supernatants were collected on day 8 for the HBV DNA and antigen determinations.

Determination of EC₅₀ values.

The compounds were tested at 7 concentrations, 3-fold dilution, in triplicate.

Double combination study.

Two compounds were tested at 5×5 matrix, in triplicate plates.

Assay for cytotoxicity by Cell Counting Kit-8 at day 8

The culture media was removed from the cell culture plate, and then CCK8 (Biolite # 35004) working solution was added to the cells. The plate was incubated at 37 °C, and the absorbance was measured at 450nm wavelength and reference absorbance was measured at 650nm wavelength by SpectraMax.

Quantification of HBV DNA in the culture supernatants by qPCR

DNA in the culture supernatants harvested on days 8 were isolated with QIAamp 96 DNA Blood Kit (Qiagen-51161). For each sample, 100 µl of the culture supernatants was used to extract DNA. The DNA was eluted with 100µl, 150µl or 180 µl of AE. HBV DNA in the culture supernatants was quantified by qPCR. The combination effect was analyzed by the MacSynergy software. The primers are described below.

Primer information

Primer R	GACAAACGGGCAACATACCTT
Primer F	GTGTCTGCGCGTITTTATCA
Probe	5'FAM CCTCTKCATCCTGCTGCTATGCCTCATC 3'TAMRA

Measurement of HBsAg and HBeAg in the culture supernatants by ELISA

HBsAg / HBeAg in the culture supernatants harvested on days 8 were measured by the HBsAg / HBeAg ELISA kit (Autobio) according to the manual. The samples were diluted with

PBS to get the signal in the range of the standard curve. The inhibition rates were calculated with the formula below. The combination effect was analyzed by the MacSynergy software.

$$\% \text{ Inh. HBsAg} = \left[1 - \frac{\text{HBsAg quantity of sample}}{\text{HBV quantity of DMSO control}} \right] \times 100.$$

$$\% \text{ Inh. HBeAg} = \left[1 - \frac{\text{HBeAg quantity of sample}}{\text{HBV quantity of DMSO control}} \right] \times 100.$$

5

SIRNA-NP

SIRNA-NP is a lipid nanoparticle formulation of a mixture of three siRNAs targeting the HBV genome. The following lipid nanoparticle (LNP) formulation was used to deliver the HBV siRNAs. The values shown in the table are mole percentages. The abbreviation DSPC means distearoylphosphatidylcholine.

10

PEG-C-DMA	Cationic lipid	Cholesterol	DSPC
1.6	54.6	32.8	10.9

The cationic lipid had the following structure:



15

The sequences of the three siRNAs are shown below.

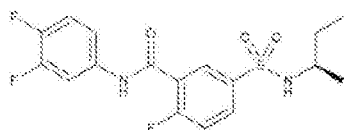
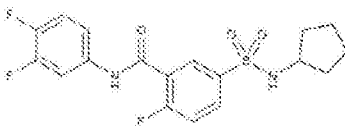
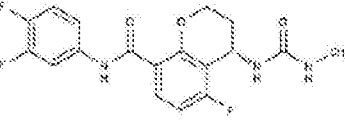
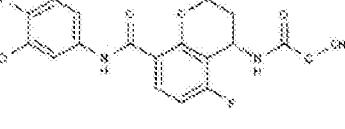
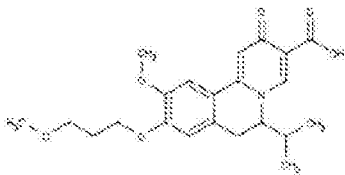
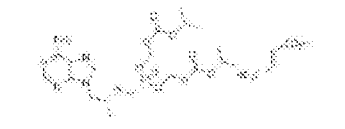
	Sense Sequence (5'-3')	Antisense Sequence (5' - 3')
	rCrCmGrUmGmUrGrCrArCrUmUrCmG rCmUmUrCrArUrU	rUrGrArAmGrCmGrArArGmUmGrCrAm CrAmCmGrGrUrU
	rCmUmGmGrCmUrCrArGmUrUmUrAmC mUrAmGmUmGrUrU	rCrArCrUrAmGmUrArArAmCrUmGrAm GrCmCrArGrUrU
	rAmCrCmUrCmUrGmCrCmUrAmArUmC rArUrCrUrCrUrU	rGrArGrArUrGmArUmUrArGrGmCrAm GrAmGrGrUrUrU
	rN = RNA of base N	
	mN = 2'O-methyl modification of base N	

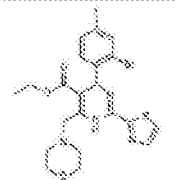
Composition of Pegylated Interferon Alpha 2a (IFNα2a):

This agent was purchased from a commercial source:

Sample ID	Vendor	Size	Lot No.	Stock Conc.
Peginterferon alfa-2a	Roche	180 ug/0.5ml	B1370	5040000 IU/mL

The following compounds were also used.

Compound Name or ID number	Structure
3	
22	
23	
24	
25	
Tenofovir Disoproxil Fumarate (TDF)	

Tenofovir Alafenamide (TAF)	
GLS4 (HAP)	

Example 15

In vitro combination of Compound 24 and TDF

Study Goal

- 5 To determine whether a two-drug combination of compound **24** (a small molecule inhibitor of HBV encapsidation belonging to the amino chroman chemical class), and tenofovir (in the form of the prodrug tenofovir disoproxil fumarate, or TDF, a nucleotide analog inhibitor of HBV polymerase), is additive, synergistic or antagonistic *in vitro* using HBV-infected human primary hepatocytes in a cell culture model system.

10 Results and Conclusion

- TDF (concentration range of 10.0 nM to 0.12 nM in a 3-fold dilution series and 5 point titration) was tested in combination with **24** (concentration range of 1000 nM to 12.36 nM in a 3-fold dilution series and 5 point titration). The average % inhibition in HBV DNA, HBsAg, and HBeAg and standard deviations of 3 replicates observed either with **24** or TDF treatments
15 alone or in combination are shown in Tables 15a, 15b and 15c as indicated below. The EC₅₀ values of TDF and **24** were determined in an earlier experiment and are shown in Table 15d; some variance was observed from different lots of PHH cells.

- When the observed values of a two-inhibitor combination were compared to what is expected from additive interaction for the above concentration range, the combinations were
20 found to be synergistic or additive, with no antagonism (Table 15d) as per MacSynergy II analysis and using the interpretive criteria described above by Prichard and Shipman (1992). No significant inhibition of cell viability or proliferation was observed by microscopy or CCK8 assay.

5

10

Table 15a: Effect on HBV DNA in *In Vitro* Combination of Compound 24 and TDF

[DRUG] TDF (nM)	0.00	12.35	37.04	111.11	333.33	1000.00	AVERAGE % INHIBITION COMPOUND 24 (nM)
10.00	-15.4	16.23	29.76	33.41	71.99	82.62	
3.33	3.15	24.17	38.1	39.55	71.87	87.48	
1.11	2.49	24.8	24.74	33.45	73.25	85.58	
0.37	-6.24	17.61	35.35	37.05	68.52	87.29	
0.12	-1.16	25.72	25.72	33.54	75.06	86.83	
0.00	0	-37.82	-31.86	-4.54	59.29	81.07	
[DRUG] TDF (nM)	0.00	12.35	37.04	111.11	333.33	1000.00	STANDARD DEVIATION (%) COMPOUND 24 (nM)
10.00	20.9 5	6.25	5.54	16.51	4.45	1.41	
3.33	2.99	2.31	4.58	5.73	2.87	0.32	
1.11	16.5 2	2.03	9.97	11.11	3.87	1.02	
0.37	19.4 9	1.06	13.17	2.12	3.62	0.7	
0.12	21.3 8	7.78	1.65	6.37	1.38	1.46	
0.00	15.9	17.16	15.42	5.85	4.35	3.8	
[DRUG] TDF (nM)	0.00	12.35	37.04	111.11	333.33	1000.00	ADDITIVE INHIBITION Compound 24 (nM)
10.00	-15.4	-59.04	-52.17	-20.54	63.02	78.15	
3.33	3.15	-33.48	-27.71	-1.25	69.57	81.67	
1.11	2.49	-34.39	-28.56	-1.94	66.3	81.54	
0.37	-6.24	-46.42	-40.09	-11.06	56.75	79.89	
0.12	-1.16	-39.42	-33.39	-5.75	58.82	80.85	
0.00	0	-37.82	-31.86	-4.54	59.29	81.07	

[DRUG]	0	12.346	37.037	111.11	333.33	1000	SYNERGY PLOT (98.9%)
TDF (nM)							
10.00	0	64.701	62.697		4.3250	0	CONTENTS Adj. 98%
3.33	0	58.047	42.737	21.842	2.5130	4.7658	
1.11	0	51.509	23.470		0.8720	1.6631	log volume 133.52
0.37	0	60.541	32.097	41.133		5.0963	
0.12	0	39.536	9	3	4	4	ANTAGONISM 0
0.00	0	0	0	0	0	0	
							log volume 0

5

10 Table 15b: Effect on HBsAg in *In Vitro* Combination of Compound 24 and TDF

[DRUG]	0.00	12.35	37.04	111.11	333.33	1000.00	AVERAGE % INHIBITION COMPOUND 24
TDF (nM)							
10.00	-6.85	-18.37	-4.65	-5.18	-9.32	22.45	
3.33	-1.28	15.87	17.06	10.42	10.42	34.98	
1.11	-3.54	11.17	11.06	14.54	15.54	33.45	
0.37	-3.32	1.88	7.61	5.28	8.04	35.4	
0.12	-3.31	8.08	-0.03	-1.09	-3.03	29.86	
0.00	0	-17.52	-21.67	-27.16	-25.87	12.01	
[DRUG]	0.00	12.35	37.04	111.11	333.33	1000.00	STANDARD DEVIATION (%) COMPOUND 24
TDF (nM)							
10.00	8.24	26.3	12.4	23.19	9.78	5.74	
3.33	8.1	15.58	17.2	4.88	3.18	4.67	
1.11	15.91	5.34	11.06	6.21	3.77	6.62	
0.37	11.33	16.35	16.52	12.36	17.13	6.72	
0.12	14.18	5.14	4.68	11.32	17.38	5.67	
0.00	11.65	23.43	8.53	22.25	22.43	14.73	

[DRUG]	0.00	12.35	37.04	111.11	333.33	1000.00	ADDITIVE INHIBITION COMPOUND 24
TDF (nM)							
10.00	-6.65	-25.76	-29.76	-35.62	-34.24	6.16	
3.33	-1.28	-18.43	-21.23	-28.79	-27.48	10.88	
1.11	-3.54	-22.09	-25.98	-31.66	-30.33	8.9	
0.37	-3.32	-21.83	-25.71	-31.38	-30.05	9.09	
0.12	-3.31	-21.82	-25.7	-31.37	-30.04	9.1	
0.00	0	-17.92	-21.87	-27.16	-25.87	12.01	
[DRUG]	0	12.348	37.037	111.11	333.33	1000	SYNERGY PLOT (99.9%)
TDF (nM)							
10.00	0	0	0	0	0	0	Bonferroni Adj. 99%
3.33	0	0	0	23.808	27.434	8.3310	SYNERGY 166.48
1.11	0	15.686	0.0744	25.752	33.462	1.7782	log volume 37.9
0.37	0	0	0	0	0	4.1944	
0.12	0	12.884	10.268	0	0	2.1060	ANTAGONISM 5
0.00	0	0	0	0	0	0	log volume 0

5

10 Table 15c: Effect on HBeAg in *In Vitro* Combination of Compound 24 and TDF

[DRUG]	0.00	12.35	37.04	111.11	333.33	1000.00	AVERAGE % INHIBITION COMPOUND 24 (nM)
TDF (nM)							
10.00	6.07	-1.44	9.13	0.82	-2.83	22.98	
3.33	11.6	1	18.99	11.19	11.4	7.62	30.82
1.11	12.6	4	7.84	11.45	7.21	14.03	29.45
0.37	6.23	1.33	7.42	10.84	16.24	27.43	
0.12	7.62	7.72	1.74	10.66	7.19	22.38	
0.00	0	-2.71	-12.8	-12.74	-14.74	13.04	

[DRUG]	0.00	12.35	37.04	111.1	333.3	1000.00	STANDARD DEVIATION (%) COMPOUND 24 (nM)
TDF (nM)				1	3		
10.00	8.14	8.12	21.17	12.08	22.48	15.84	
23.0	21.21	19.81	18.06	17.88	17.08		
3.33	18.3	5.04	7.68	10.39	18.1	14.46	
1.11	14.7	5	11.05	13.95	12.33	18.21	
0.37	18.9	6	7.42	4.84	17.01	19.91	
0.12	19.3	4	8.37	3.32	16.68	26.64	
0.00						18.52	
[DRUG]	0.00	12.35	37.04	111.1	333.3	1000.00	ADDITIVE INHIBITION COMPOUND 24 (nM)
TDF (nM)				1	3		
10.00	8.87	3.52	-5.95	-6.9	-7.78	18.32	
23.0	11.6	1	9.21	6.3	0.35	-1.42	
3.33	12.0	4	9.66	0.78	0.83	-0.83	
1.11							
0.37	6.23	3.69	-5.77	-8.72	-7.59	18.46	
0.12	7.02	4.5	-4.88	-4.83	-6.69	19.14	
0.00	8	-3.71	-12.6	-12.74	-14.74	13.84	
[DRUG]	0	12.34	37.03	111.1	333.3	1000	SYNERGY PLOT (99.9%) Bioterronol Act 98% SYNERGY 0 log volume 0 ANTAGONISM 0 log volume 0
TDF (nM)				1	3		
10.00	0	0	0	0	0	0	
23.33	0	0	0	0	0	0	
1.11	0	0	0	0	0	0	
0.37	0	0	0	0	0	0	
0.12	0	0	0	0	0	0	
0.00	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Table 15d: Summary of results of *in vitro* combination studies of Compound 24 and TDF in PHH cell culture system:

HBV Assay Endpoint	Inhibitor A	Inhibitor B	Inhibitor A EC ₅₀ (nM)#	Inhibitor B EC ₅₀ (nM)#	Synergy Volume (μM ³ %)*	Synergy Log Volume	Antagonism Volume (μM ³ %)*	Antagonism Log Volume	Conclusion
HBV DNA	TDF	24	5.16	181.6	586.54	133.52	0	0	Synergy
HBsAg	TDF	24	>100	~1104	166.48	37.9	0	0	Synergy
HBeAg	TDF	24	>100	1087	0	0	0	0	Additive

*at 99.9% confidence interval

#determined in an earlier separate experiment

Example 16

5 *In vitro* combination of Compound 23 and TDF

Study Goal

To determine whether a two-drug combination of compound **23** (a small molecule inhibitor of HBV encapsidation belonging to the amino chroman chemical class), and tenofovir (in the form of the prodrug tenofovir disoproxil fumarate, or TDF, a nucleotide analog inhibitor of HBV polymerase), is additive, synergistic or antagonistic *in vitro* using HBV-infected human primary hepatocytes in a cell culture model system

Results and Conclusion

TDF (concentration range of 10.0 nM to 0.12 nM in a 3-fold dilution series and 5 point titration) was tested in combination with compound **23** (concentration range of 2000 nM to 24.69 nM in a 3-fold dilution series and 5 point titration). The average % inhibition in HBV DNA, HBsAg and HBeAg and standard deviations of 3 replicates observed either with compound **23** or TDF treatments alone or in combination are shown in Tables 16a, 16b and 16c as indicated below. The EC₅₀ values of TDF and compound **23** were determined in an earlier experiment and are shown in Table 16d; some variance was observed from different lots of PHH cells.

When the observed values of a two-inhibitor combination were compared to what is expected from additive interaction for the above concentration range, the combinations were found to be synergistic or additive, with no antagonism (Table 16d) as per MacSynergy II analysis and using the interpretive criteria described above by Prichard and Shipman (1992). No

significant inhibition of cell viability or proliferation was observed by microscopy or CCK8 assay.

5

Table 16a: Effect on HBV DNA in *In Vitro* Combination of Compound 23 and TDF

[DRUG] TDF (nM)	0.00	24.69	74.07	222.22	666.67	2000.00	AVERAGE % INHIBITION COMPOUND 23 (nM)
10.00	22.03	15.63	21.53	50.31	68.1	83.45	
3.33	24.89	11.9	28.62	42.03	71.16	83.1	
1.11	24.36	27.41	28.29	48.82	71.34	85.27	
0.37	-4.64	15.67	10.9	25.68	68.73	79.5	
0.12	19.34	14.57	16.57	17.02	55.55	74.8	
0.00	0	-15.33	-36.58	0.78	30.45	68.97	
[DRUG] TDF (nM)	0.00	24.69	74.07	222.22	666.67	2000.00	STANDARD DEVIATION (%) COMPOUND 23 (nM)
10.00	18.88	12.93	22.36	13.68	10.17	4.55	
3.33	25.42	13.82	12.76	20.92	9.9	3.38	
1.11	26.88	5.72	8.4	18.61	10.85	1	
0.37	22.45	24.94	16.71	27.51	5.72	2.86	
0.12	30.88	14.7	14.28	32.63	13.67	7.16	
0.00	26.21	25.58	43.45	19.95	15.56	7.23	
[DRUG] TDF (nM)	0.00	24.69	74.07	222.22	666.67	2000.00	ADDITIVE INHIBITION COMPOUND 23 (nM)
10.00	22.03	10.08	-6.48	22.64	45.77	76.59	
3.33	24.89	13.38	-2.58	25.48	47.76	77.44	
1.11	24.36	12.76	-3.31	34.95	47.39	77.29	
0.37	-4.64	-20.68	-42.92	-3.82	27.22	58.54	
0.12	19.34	-37.63	-62.99	-15.41	17	64.16	
0.00	0	-15.33	-36.58	8.78	30.45	68.97	

[DRUG]	0	24.691	74.074	222.22	666.67	2000	SYNERGY PLOT (95.9%) Bonferroni Adj 95%
TDF (nM)							
10.00	0	0	0	0	0	0	SYNERGY 60.83 log volume 13.85
3.33	0	0	0	0	0	0	
1.11	0	0	0.9556	0	0	4.689	ANTAGONISM 0 log volume 0
0.37	0	0	0	0	17.3945	1.40891	
0.12	0	3.8223	32.5645	0	0	0	
0.00	0	0	0	0	0	0	

3

10 Table 16b: Effect on HBsAg in *In Vitro* Combination of Compound 23 and TDF

[DRUG]	0.00	24.69	74.07	222.22	666.67	2000.00	AVERAGE % INHIBITION COMPOUND 23 (nM)
TDF (nM)							
10.00	-5.9	-11.78	-17.98	-10.56	-12.87	-5.13	
3.33	-0.9	-6.32	2.74	5.75	3.08	8.14	
1.11	0.79	6.63	9.66	9.96	9.67	13.55	
0.37	-0.3	10.94	6.63	9.48	6.86	12.89	
0.12	3.38	8.13	3.89	3.99	1.92	13.78	
0.00	0	-13.83	-10.9	-11.64	-4.45	0.48	

[DRUG]	0.00	24.69	74.07	222.22	666.67	2000.00	STANDARD DEVIATION (%) COMPOUND 23 (nM)
TDF (nM)							
10.00	11.4 4	13.32	9.26	8.99	12.92	8.2	
3.33	18.1 1	12.81	5.08	1.71	3.38	5.78	
1.11	19.9 9	5.11	10.31	10.32	3.11	4.85	
0.37	21.7 3	2.38	8.21	5.77	9.18	7.38	
0.12	8.05 14.5	3.32	4.82	11.75	7.98	9.54	
0.00	6	9.27	5.47	14.27	11.74	9.35	

[DRUG] TDF (nM)	0.00	24.89	74.07	222.22	666.67	2000.00	ADDITIONAL INHIBITION COMPOUND 23 (nM)
10.00	-5.9	-20.61	-17.44	-15.23	-10.61	-5.39	
3.33	-6.9	-14.92	-11.9	-12.64	-5.38	-9.42	
1.11	0.79	-12.98	-10.02	-10.76	-3.62	1.27	
0.37	-6.3	-14.23	-11.23	-11.97	-4.76	0.18	
0.12	3.39	-10.03	-7.14	-7.88	-0.91	3.85	
0.03	0	-13.89	-10.8	-11.64	-4.45	0.48	
[DRUG] TDF (nM)	0	24.89	74.07	222.22	666.67	2000	SYNERGY PLOT (89.9%) Bortolotti Adj. 96%
10.00	0	0	0	0	0	0	
3.33	0	0	0	12.782	0	0	
1.11	0	2.8028	0	4	3.2543	0	
0.37	0	8	0	0	0	0	
0.12	0	17.337	0	2.4809	0	0	
0.03	0	4	0	3	0	0	
		7.2338	0	0	0	0	
	0	8	0	0	0	0	SYNERGY 48.85 log volume 10.44
0.00	0	0	0	0	0	0	
							ANTAGONISM 0 log volume 0

6

10 Table 16c: Effect on HBeAg in *In Vitro* Combination of Compound 23 and TDF

[DRUG] TDF (nM)	0.00	24.89	74.07	222.2	666.6	2000.00	AVERAGE % INHIBITION COMPOUND 23 (nM)
10.00	0.72	-10.51	-5.20	-10.54	-11.3	-5.48	
3.33	6.06	-5.06	3.12	2.98	4.06	4.28	
1.11	12.7	8	7.59	9.52	0.77	7	
0.37	6.74	4.37	2.31	6.35	5.4	10.51	
0.12	4.4	8.06	5.22	-0.68	6.5	7.62	
0.03	0	-8.92	-6.36	-12.71	-7.94	-1.09	

[DRUG]	0.00	24.69	74.07	222.2	666.6	2000.00	STANDARD DEVIATION (%)
TDF (nM)				2	7		
10.00	18.7						COMPOUND 23 (nM)
	8	17.81	6.61	8.4	11.1	15.98	
3.33	9.89	18.88	13.21	11.51	7.76	17.13	
1.11	8.33	4.36	8.23	7.06	4.64	6.33	
	12.3						
0.37	5	9.41	8.19	15.07	13.35	17.74	
0.12	5.94	2.55	2.72	11.85	7.25	9.82	
0.00	18.2						COMPOUND 23 (nM)
	7	1.84	6.49	8.83	9.47	7.31	
[DRUG]	0.00	24.69	74.07	222.2	666.6	2000.00	ADDITIVE INHIBITION
TDF (nM)				2	7		
10.00	5.72	-8.04	-5.59	-11.9	-7.16	-0.38	COMPOUND 23 (nM)
3.33	8.05	1.93	3.27	-2.51	1.83	8.06	
	12.7						
1.11	8	5.08	7.23	1.69	5.85	11.83	
0.37	6.74	-1.49	0.81	-5.11	-0.66	5.72	
0.12	4.4	-4.93	-1.58	-7.75	-3.19	3.35	
0.00	8	-8.82	-6.36	-12.71	-7.94	-1.09	
[DRUG]	0	24.69	74.07	222.2	666.6	2000	SYNERGY PLOT (99.9%)
TDF (nM)			4	3	7		
10.00	0	0	0	0	0	0	Bonferroni Adj 99.9% SYNERGY 3.73 log volume 0.85 ANTAGONISM 0 log volume 0
3.33	0	0	0	0	0	0	
1.11	0	0	0	0	0	0	
0.37	0	0	0	0	0	0	
		3.7279					
0.12	0	5	0	0	0	0	
0.00	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Table 16d: Summary of results of *in vitro* combination studies of compound 23 and TDF in PHH cell culture system:

HBV Assay Endpoint	Inhibitor A	Inhibitor B	Inhibitor A EC ₅₀ (nM)#	Inhibitor B EC ₅₀ (nM)#	Synergy Volume (μM ² %)*	Synergy Log Volume	Antagonism Volume (μM ² %)*	Antagonism Log Volume	Conclusion
HBV DNA	TDF	COMPOUND 23	5.62	229.6	60.83	13.85	0	0	Synergy
HBsAg	TDF	COMPOUND 23	>100	4.36	45.85	10.44	0	0	Synergy
HBsAg	TDF	COMPOUND 23	>100	4.53	3.73	0.85	0	0	Additive

*at 99.9% confidence interval

#determined in an earlier separate experiment

Example 17

5 *In vitro* combination of Compound 23 and TAF

In vitro Combination Study Goal

To determine whether a two-drug combination of compound 23 (a small molecule inhibitor of HBV encapsidation belonging to the amino chroman chemical class), and tenofovir (in the form of the prodrug tenofovir alafenamide, or TAF, a nucleotide analog inhibitor of HBV polymerase), is additive, synergistic or antagonistic *in vitro* using HBV-infected human primary hepatocytes in a cell culture model system

Results and Conclusion

TAF (concentration range of 10.0 nM to 0.12 nM in a 3-fold dilution series and 5 point titration) was tested in combination with compound 23 (concentration range of 2000 nM to 24.69 nM in a 3-fold dilution series and 5 point titration). The average % inhibition in HBV DNA and HBsAg and standard deviations of 3 replicates observed either with compound 23 or TAF treatments alone or in combination are shown in Tables 17a and 17b as indicated below. The EC₅₀ values of TAF and compound 23 were determined in an earlier experiment and are shown in Table 17c; some variance was observed from different lots of PHH cells.

When the observed values of a two-inhibitor combination were compared to what is expected from additive interaction for the above concentration range, the combinations were found to be additive, with no antagonism (Table 17c) as per MacSynergy II analysis and using

the interpretive criteria described above by Prichard and Shipman (1992). No significant inhibition of cell viability or proliferation was observed by microscopy or CCK8 assay.

5

10 **Table 17a: Effect on HBV DNA in *In Vitro* Combination of Compound 23 and TAF**

[DRUG]	0	24.69 1	74.07 4	222.22 7	666.6 7	2000	AVERAGE % INHIBITION COMPOUND 23 (nM)
TAF (nM)							
0.00							
10.00	43.3 3	52.86	53.67	61.85	58.03	66.33	
3.33	42.6	41.59	42.58	42.01	55.97	53.47	
1.11	2.73 11.5	26	24.84	30.46	45.15	52.57	
0.37	9	10.66	15.11	15.55	38.82	64.27	
0.12	6.36	12.62	-10.64	15.2	36.81	52.56	
0.00	0	-4.57	-2.49	11.13	30.46	58.13	
[DRUG]	0	24.69 1	74.07 4	222.22 7	666.6 7	2000	STANDARD DEVIATION (%) COMPOUND 23 (nM)
TAF (nM)							
10.00	19.2 3	6.08	15.14	6.57	11.43	9.3	
3.33	5.19 15.8	11.48	8.01	13.55	8.93	4.21	
1.11	5 14.0	19.36	8.78	4.56	12.22	8.28	
0.37	7	2.95	9.65	20.83	4.73	0.79	
0.12	4.65	9.48	19.93	8.28	0.72	12.12	
0.00	0.02	6.18	25.79	14.9	9.52	3.29	
[DRUG]	0	24.69 1	74.07 4	222.22 7	666.6 7	2000	ADDITIVE INHIBITION COMPOUND 23 (nM)
TAF (nM)							
10.00	43.3 3	40.74	41.92	49.64	66.55	76.27	
3.33	42.6	39.98	41.17	46.98	61.06	75.97	
1.11	2.73 11.5	-1.72	6.31	13.56	32.36	59.17	
0.37	9	7.95	9.39	21.43	38.52	62.98	
0.12	6.36	2.06	4.93	16.78	34.88	60.75	
0.00	0	-4.57	-2.49	11.13	30.46	58.13	

[DRUG]	0	24.69	74.07	222.2	666.6	2000
TAF (nM)						
10.00	0	0	0	0	0	0
3.33	0	0	0	0	0	8.644
1.11	0	0	0	1.9930	0	0
0.37	0	0	0	0	0	0
0.12	0	0	0	0	0	0
0.00	0	0	0	0	0	0

SYNERGY PLOT (98.9%)	
Burnham's Adj.	98%
SYNERGY	1.89
log volume	0.43
ANTAGONISM	-8.64
log volume	-1.97

5

10

Table 17b: Effect on HBsAg in *In Vitro* Combination of Compound 23 and TAF

[DRUG]	0	24.69	74.07	222.2	666.6	2000
TAF (nM)						
0.00						
10.00	6.38	9.2	3.4	-8.99	5.26	23.51
3.33	16.12	8.56	9.56	9.37	11.57	28.56
1.11	29.56	18.05	20.47	9.86	18.31	33.24
0.37	7.04	11.13	3.68	-2.3	-2.92	22.32
0.12	22.99	21.29	19.81	16.79	8.85	28.41
0.00	0	0.77	-5.27	4.63	1.95	22.77

AVERAGE % INHIBITION	
COMPOUND 23 (nM)	

[DRUG]	0	24.69	74.07	222.2	666.6	2000
TAF (nM)						
10.00	3.03	12.37	11.66	6.63	7.08	10.25
3.33	3.56	2.28	2.5	17.48	9.97	8.2
1.11	9.91	17.87	8.37	8.64	8.88	5.26
0.37	9.67	9.77	10.47	17.15	5.76	1.93
0.12	3.68	9.62	13.76	11.56	9.3	13.42
0.00	1.83	21.53	8.58	26.08	6.89	7.12

STANDARD DEVIATION (%)	
COMPOUND 23 (nM)	

[DRUG]	0	24.68 1	74.07 4	222.2 2	666.6 7	2000	ADDITIVE INHIBITION COMPOUND 23 (nM)
TAF (nM)							
10.00	6.38	7.1	1.45	10.9	8.21	27.7	
3.33	16.12	16.77	11.7	20.17	17.76	35.22	
1.11	29.66	30.2	25.95	33.06	31.03	45.68	
0.37	7.04	7.76	2.14	11.53	6.85	28.21	
0.12	23.89	23.58	18.93	26.71	24.49	40.53	
0.00	0	0.77	-5.27	4.83	1.65	22.77	

[DRUG]	0	24.68 1	74.07 4	222.2 2	666.6 7	2000	SYNERGY PLOT (99.9%) Bonferroni Adj. 99%
TAF (nM)							
10.00	0	0	0	0	0	0	SYNERGY 0
3.33	0	0	0	0	0	0	log volume 0
1.11	0	0	0	0	0	0	
0.37	0	0	0	0	0	0	ANTAGONISM 0
0.12	0	0	0	0	0	0	log volume 0
0.00	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Table 17c: Summary of results of *in vitro* combination studies of Compound 23 and TAF in PHH cell culture system:

HBV Assay Endpoint	Inhibitor A	Inhibitor B	Inhibitor A EC ₅₀ (nM)#	Inhibitor B EC ₅₀ (nM)#	Synergy Volume (μM ² %)*	Synergy Log Volume	Antagonism Volume (μM ² %)*	Antagonism Log Volume	Conclusion
HBV DNA	TAF	COMPOUND 23	0.405	229.6	1.89	0.43	-8.64	-1.97	Additive
HBsAg	TAF	COMPOUND 23	>100	4.36	0	0	0	0	Additive

*at 99.9% confidence interval

#determined in an earlier separate experiment

5

Example 18

In vitro combination of IFNα2a and Compound 25

Study Goal

To determine whether a two-drug combination of compound **25** (a small molecule inhibitor of HBV DNA, HBsAg and HBeAg, belonging to the dihydroquinolizinone chemical class), and pegylated interferon alpha 2a (IFNα2a, an antiviral cytokine that activates innate

immunity pathways in hepatocytes), is additive, synergistic or antagonistic *in vitro* using HBV-infected human primary hepatocytes in a cell culture model system.

Results and Conclusion

IFN α 2a (concentration range of 10.0 IU/mL to 0.123 IU/mL in a 3-fold dilution series and 5 point titration) was tested in combination with compound **25** (concentration range of 10.0 nM to 0.12 nM in a 3-fold dilution series and 5 point titration). The average % inhibition in HBV DNA, HBsAg and HBeAg, and standard deviations of 3 replicates observed either with IFN α 2a or compound **25** treatments alone or in combination are shown in Table 18a, 18b, and 18c as indicated below. The EC₅₀ values of IFN α 2a and compound **25** were determined in an earlier experiment and are shown in Table 18d; some variance was observed from different lots of PHH cells.

When the observed values of a two-inhibitor combination were compared to what is expected from additive interaction for the above concentration range, the combinations were found to be synergistic, with no antagonism (Table 18d) as per MacSynergy II analysis and using the interpretive criteria described above by Prichard and Shipman (1992). No significant inhibition of cell viability or proliferation was observed by microscopy or CCK8 assay.

Table 18a: Effect on HBV DNA in *In Vitro* Combination of IFN α 2a and Compound 25

[DRUG]	0.00	0.12	0.37	1.11	3.33	10.00	AVERAGE % INHIBITION COMPOUND 25 (μ M)
IFN α 2a IU/mL							
10.00	98.66	72.01	77.55	74.4	74.57	75.72	
3.33	48.92	70.84	75.67	71.52	79.37	81.47	
1.11	32.65	60.24	64.08	65.29	76.55	76.76	
0.37	22.81	48.83	65.68	55.85	71.08	75.44	
0.12	15.84	40.19	39.08	35.54	65.34	64.9	
0.00	0	-14.4	-9.87	4.3	32.64	53.78	

[DRUG]	0.00	0.12	0.37	1.11	3.33	10.00	STANDARD DEVIATION (%) COMPOUND 25 (μ M)
IFN α 2a							
10/mL							
10.00	8.27	8.96	1.44	5.15	6.13	9.02	
3.33	6.8	2.16	3.21	1.91	3.01	4.5	
1.11	7.83	10.58	6.34	2.57	2.47	2.79	
0.37	6.72	4.88	7.54	12.83	7.17	1.6	
0.12	15.09	10.34	11.46	15.82	5.84	3.79	
0.00	29.83	27.89	12.43	13.66	21.25	5.81	
[DRUG]	0.00	0.12	0.37	1.11	3.33	10.00	ADDITIVE INHIBITION COMPOUND 25 (μ M)
IFN α 2a							
10/mL							
10.00	58.86	52.71	54.58	60.44	72.15	80.89	
3.33	46.92	38.28	41.68	49.2	64.26	75.47	
1.11	32.86	22.96	26.01	35.55	54.64	68.88	
0.37	22.81	11.69	15.19	26.13	48	64.32	
0.12	19.64	-37.1	-31.67	-14.69	19.28	44.61	
0.00	0	-14.4	-5.87	4.3	32.64	53.78	
[DRUG]	0	0.1235	0.3764	1.1111	3.3333	10	SYNERGY PLOT (99.9%)
IFN α 2a							
10/mL							
10.00	0	18.1406	18.201	0	0	0	
3.33	0	24.4514	23.4259	18.0342	5.21409	0	
1.11	0	2.46123	17.2051	21.2721	13.7812	0	
0.37	0	21.8039	17.3214	0	0	5.8544	
0.12	0	43.2611	33.0351	0	26.8436	7.81711	
0.00	0	0	0	0	0	0	
							Bonferroni Adj. 98%
							SYNERGY 314.15
							log volume 71.51
							ANTAGONISM 0
							log volume 0

5

Table 18b: Effect on HBsAg in *In Vitro* Combination of IFNa2a and Compound 25

[DRUG]	0.00	0.12	0.37	1.11	3.33	10.00	AVERAGE % INHIBITION COMPOUND 25 (μM)
IFNa2a							
10.00	22.77	27.23	22.41	30.26	37.23	63.56	
3.33	18.32	28.86	27.09	35.53	43.71	66.88	
1.11	10.57	27	31.57	31.22	38.7	68.37	
0.37	2.74	18.78	15.88	25.14	34.24	69.44	
0.12	-4.08	11.87	10.92	14.5	34.52	56.65	
0.00	0	-5.64	-7.52	-7.33	8.81	42.49	
[DRUG]	0.00	0.12	0.37	1.11	3.33	10.00	STANDARD DEVIATION (%) COMPOUND 25 (μM)
IFNa2a							
10.00	8.68	6.87	2.29	4.73	7.98	4.01	
3.33	9.52	6.19	8.14	6.04	6.94	4.47	
1.11	2.72	4.07	4.71	1.23	4.72	0.28	
0.37	8.06	2.56	1.27	2.26	2.05	4.7	
0.12	6.17	2.65	2.53	0.54	1.95	2.99	
0.00	7	8.29	12.25	8.62	8.48	4.98	
[DRUG]	0.00	0.12	0.37	1.11	3.33	10.00	ADDITIVE INHIBITION COMPOUND 25 (μM)
IFNa2a							
10.00	22.77	18.41	16.96	17.11	29.57	55.59	
3.33	18.32	13.71	12.18	12.33	25.52	53.03	
1.11	10.57	5.53	3.84	4.01	18.45	48.57	
0.37	2.74	-2.75	-4.57	-4.39	11.31	44.07	
0.12	-4.08	-5.95	-11.91	-11.71	5.09	40.14	
0.00	0	-5.64	-7.52	-7.33	8.81	42.49	

[DRUG]	0	0.1235	0.3704	1.1111	3.3333	10
IFNa2a						
µM/mL						
10.00	0	0	0	0	0	0
3.33	0	0	0	3.32238	0	0
1.11	0	8.07563	12.2384	23.1621	4.71648	16.8785
0.37	0	13.105	16.3704	22.0923	16.1835	8.9023
0.12	0	13.0989	14.5038	24.4329	23.0125	6.65981
0.00	0	0	0	0	0	0

SYNERGY PLOT (94.9%)	
Bonferroni Adj.	98%
SYNERGY	218.76
log volume	48.5
ANTAGONISM	0
log volume	0

5

10 Table 18c: Effect on HBeAg in *In Vitro* Combination of IFNa2a and Compound 25

[DRUG]	0.00	0.12	0.37	1.11	3.33	10.00
10.00	17.32	33.64	22.73	25.58	32.72	51.97
3.33	6.47	24.71	20.71	18.08	27.19	49
1.11	-1.13	21.52	18.25	15.89	19.2	47.65
0.37	-12.17	16.2	8.56	12.48	14.45	40.46
0.12	-21.05	1.9	3.84	6.95	15.57	39.99
0.00	0	-11.25	-13.81	-16.8	-7.31	22.04

AVERAGE % INHIBITION COMPOUND 25 (µM)	
---	--

[DRUG]	0.00	0.12	0.37	1.11	3.33	10.00
IFNa2a						
µM/mL						
10.00	11.74	4.4	2.35	5.73	3.68	4.09
3.33	18.07	8.01	1.6	5.75	14.7	8.73
1.11	17.14	4.93	2.29	7.45	9.68	6.75
0.37	26.1	2.4	6.51	8.28	5.47	8
0.12	25.35	7.46	12.09	14.45	5.05	10.25
0.00	19.06	11.33	16.27	24	19.27	14.29

STANDARD DEVIATION (%) COMPOUND 25 (µM)	
---	--

[DRUG]	0.00	0.12	0.37	1.11	3.33	10.00	ADDITIVE INHIBITION COMPOUND 25 (μ M)
IFN α 2a							
μ l/mL							
10.00	17.32	8.02	5.9	3.43	11.28	35.54	
3.33	6.47	-4.05	-6.45	-8.24	-0.37	27.08	
1.11	-1.13	-12.51	-15.1	-18.12	-6.52	21.15	
0.37	-12.17	-24.79	-27.68	-31.01	-20.37	12.55	
0.12	-21.05	-34.67	-37.77	-41.39	-29.8	5.63	
0.00	0	-11.25	-13.81	-18.8	-7.51	22.04	

[DRUG]	0	0.1235	0.3709	1.1111	3.3333	10	SYNERGY PLOT (99.9%)
IFN α 2a							
μ l/mL							
10.00	0	11.1358	9.09615	3.29257	9.32912	2.96981	
3.33	0	2.39909	21.8944	9.37675	0	0	
1.11	0	17.6054	25.8136	9.59295	0	4.17575	
0.37	0	27.0916	14.7958	16.2405	16.8182	0	
0.12	0	12.0191	1.82181	0	15.9865	0	
0.00	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bonferroni Adj.	96%
SYNERGY	231.36
log volume	52.67
ANTAGONISM	0
log volume	0

Table 18d: Summary of results of *in vitro* combination studies of IFN α 2a and Compound 25 in PHH cell culture system:

HBV Assay Endpoint	Inhibitor A	Inhibitor B	Inhibitor A EC ₅₀ (IU/mL)#	Inhibitor B EC ₅₀ (nM)#	Synergy Volume (μ M ² %)*	Synergy Log Volume	Antagonism Volume (μ M ² %)*	Antagonism Log Volume	Conclusion
HBV DNA	IFN α 2a	COMPOUND 25	2.154	0.654	314.15	71.51	0	0	Synergy
HBsAg	IFN α 2a	COMPOUND 25	13.8	4.503	218.76	49.8	0	0	Synergy
HBcAg	IFN α 2a	COMPOUND 25	10.24	5.75	231.36	52.67	0	0	Synergy

*at 99.9% confidence interval

#determined in an earlier separate experiment

5 Example 19

In vitro combination of Compound 25 and Compound 3

Study Goal

To determine whether a two-drug combination of compound 3 (a small molecule

inhibitor of HBV encapsidation belonging to the sulfamoyl benzamide chemical class), and compound **25** (a small molecule inhibitor of HBV DNA, HBsAg and HBeAg, belonging to the dihydroquinolizinone chemical class), is additive, synergistic or antagonistic *in vitro* using HBV-infected human primary hepatocytes in a cell culture model system.

5 Results and Conclusion

Compound **25** (concentration range of 10.0 nM to 0.12 nM in a 3-fold dilution series and 5 point titration) was tested in combination with compound **3** (concentration range of 5000 nM to 61.73 nM in a 3-fold dilution series and 5 point titration). The average % inhibition in HBV DNA, HBsAg and HBeAg, and standard deviations of 3 replicates observed either with compound **25** or compound **3** treatments alone or in combination are shown in Tables 19a, 19b, and 19c as indicated below. The EC₅₀ values of compound **25** and compound **3** were determined in an earlier experiment and are shown in Table 19d; some variance was observed from different lots of PHH cells.

When the observed values of a two-inhibitor combination were compared to what is expected from additive interaction for the above concentration range, the combinations were found to be synergistic, with no antagonism (Table 19d) as per MacSynergy II analysis and using the interpretive criteria described above by Prichard and Shipman (1992). No significant inhibition of cell viability or proliferation was observed by microscopy or CCK8 assay in the analyzed samples.

Table 19a: Effect on HBV DNA in *In Vitro* Combination of Compound 25 and Compound 3

[DRUG]	0.00	61.73	185.19	555.56	1686.57	5000.00	AVERAGE % INHIBITION COMPOUND 3 (nM)
COMPOUND 25							
nM							
10.00	26	53.83	89.64	61.48	75.31	83.22	
	15.2						
3.33	4	52.77	48.78	55.49	77.64	86.19	
	5.69						
1.11	5.69	32.65	40.25	48.87	66.73	85.82	
0.37	51.8	21.47	28.54	33.37	64.64	83.77	
	20.9						
0.12	8	17.18	18.75	27.78	58.12	64.2	
0.00	0	-28.13	-25.93	-3.32	25.64	74.78	

[DRUG]	0.00	61.73	185.19	555.56	1656.67	5000.00	STANDARD DEVIATION (%) COMPOUND 3 (nM)
COMPOUND 25							
nM							
10.00	13.66	6.68	4.22	12.05	4.62	3.89	
3.33	15.64	4	6.92	3.55	5.98	2.62	
1.11	2.13	7.38	12.87	3.75	6.6	1.07	
0.37	7.11	11.92	11.57	16.68	4.9	3.83	
0.12	6.37	6.92	8.03	5.44	6.89	1.72	
0.00	37.9	8	6.82	12.75	12.64	6.98	2.18

[DRUG]	0.00	61.73	185.19	555.56	1656.67	5000.00	ADDITIVE INHIBITION COMPOUND 3 (nM)
COMPOUND 25							
nM							
10.00	28	7.75	9.33	25.51	46.58	81.84	
3.33	15.2	4	-8.5	-6.74	12.43	37.23	
1.11	4	-8.5	-6.74	12.43	37.23	78.62	
0.37	5.69	-20.64	-18.78	2.56	30.15	76.22	
0.12	-51.8	-94.5	-91.18	-56.84	-12.42	81.72	
0.00	20.9	8	-55.01	-52.35	-25	10.4	
0.00	0	-38.13	-25.93	-3.32	25.94	74.78	

[DRUG]	0	61.728	185.19	555.56	1656.7	5000	SYNERGY PLOT (99.9%) Bonferroni Adj. 98%
COMPOUND 25							
nM							
10.00	0	24.194	36.422	0	13.754	9	
3.33	0	38.596	43.837	23.379	31.625	9	
1.11	0	29.158	17.313	33.968	10.277	4	
0.37	0	79.793	81.623	35.316	60.334	9.44547	
0.12	0	48.416	44.673	34.877	25.045	9.04548	
0.00	0	0	0	0	0	0	

5

10 Table 19b: Effect on HBsAg in *In Vitro* Combination of Compound 25 and Compound 3

[DRUG]	0.00	61.73	185.19	555.56	1666.67	5000.00	AVERAGE % INHIBITION COMPOUND 3 (nM)
COMPOUND 25							
nM							
10.00	32.9 8	40.09	41.48	45.13	52.34	64.84	
3.33	13.1 2	26.32	28.85	30.97	34.56	54.59	
1.11	-3.18	21.32	20.73	21.99	32.47	58.21	
0.37	-5.03	13.81	9.92	8.14	27.4	51.59	
0.12	3.68	7.53	8.59	12.88	22.46	45.46	
0.00	0	-20.02	-17.32	-13.99	1.44	28.25	
[DRUG]	0.00	61.73	185.19	555.56	1666.67	5000.00	STANDARD DEVIATION (%) COMPOUND 3 (nM)
COMPOUND 25							
nM							
10.00	11.7 6	5.21	4.72	1.8	3.51	4.34	
3.33	9.7	5	8.34	5.49	2.08	2.72	
1.11	2.86	0.74	5.4	3.5	4.84	4.3	
0.37	3.17	7.51	16.06	12.02	5.09	4.62	
0.12	2.76	6.34	8.52	9.71	4.5	5.28	
0.00	26.6 3	3.46	15.37	12.95	14.94	14.17	
[DRUG]	0.00	61.73	185.19	555.56	1666.67	5000.00	ADDITIVE INHIBITION COMPOUND 3 (nM)
COMPOUND 25							
nM							
10.00	32.9 9	19.57	21.38	23.62	33.85	51.92	
3.33	13.1 2	-4.27	-1.93	0.97	14.37	37.66	
1.11	-3.18	-23.84	-21.05	-17.61	-1.69	25.97	
0.37	-5.09	-26.13	-23.29	-19.79	-3.58	24.6	
0.12	3.68	-15.6	-13	-9.6	5.07	30.85	
0.00	0	-20.02	-17.32	-13.99	1.44	28.25	

[DRUG]	0	61.726	165.19	555.56	1666.7	5000.0
COMPOUND 25						
nM						
10.00	0	3.3738	4.5864	16.586	6.8385	0
3.33	0	5	3.6521	11.932	13.344	0
1.11	0	14.135	5	4	7	7.97848
0.37	0	42.724	24.908	26.981	16.865	0
0.12	0	7	5	5	8	16.6887
0.00	0	15.324	0	0	14.228	11.7856
	0	2.2650	0	0	2.5605	6.18352
	0	0	0	0	0	0

SYNERGY PLOT (89.8%)

Boltzmann Adj. 98%

SYNERGY 257.49

log volume 56.63

ANTAGONISM 0

log volume 0

5

10 Table 19c: Effect on HBeAg in *In Vitro* Combination of Compound 25 and Compound 3

[DRUG]	0.00	61.73	165.19	555.56	1666.7	5000.0
COMPOUND 25						
nM						
10.00	33.1	29.55	32.13	35.12	48.63	56.72
3.33	8.74	17.06	14.55	17.58	28.19	41.81
1.11	4.51	14.84	19.85	17.54	27.32	48.49
0.37	-0.51	7.18	2.83	7.83	20.64	40.75
0.12	5.33	4.76	-1.23	8.26	17.34	42.34
0.00	0	-11.35	-16	-5.35	2.34	27.3

[DRUG]	0.00	61.73	165.19	555.56	1666.7	5000.0
COMPOUND 25						
nM						
10.00	19.0	7.64	7.38	3.04	5.15	8.44
3.33	17.5	3	4.42	4.02	3.71	1.17
1.11	11.6	5	1.81	6.69	4.6	2.82
0.37	17.5	2	6.16	8.21	11.25	3.17
0.12	17.4	2	8.48	8.81	8.1	1.87
0.00	27.3	6	3.5	5.88	8.38	7.46

AVERAGE % INHIBITION
COMPOUND 3
(nM)STANDARD DEVIATION (%)
COMPOUND 3
(nM)

[DRUG]	0.00	81.73	185.19	555.56	1588.67	5000.00
COMPOUND 25						
nM						
10.00	33.17	25.58	22.48	26.97	34.73	51.41
3.33	8.74	-1.82	-6.86	3.82	10.88	33.68
1.11	4.51	-6.33	-10.77	-0.64	6.74	30.58
0.37	-0.51	-11.92	-18.59	-5.93	1.84	26.93
0.12	5.33	-8.42	-9.82	0.23	7.55	31.17
0.00	0	-11.35	-18	-8.39	2.34	27.3

[DRUG]	0	81.728	185.19	555.56	1588.7	5000
COMPOUND 25						
nM						
10.00	0	0	0	0	0	0
3.33	0	4.1337	7.1801	1.5503	13.498	0
1.11	0	15.871	0	3.0414	4	1
0.37	0	0	0	0	11.658	0
0.12	0	0	0	0	3.0358	0
0.00	0	0	0	0	0	0

Table 19d: Summary of results of *in vitro* combination studies of Compound 25 and Compound 3 in PHH cell culture system:

HBV Assay Endpoint	Inhibitor A	Inhibitor B	Inhibitor A EC ₅₀ (nM)#	Inhibitor B EC ₅₀ (nM)#	Synergy Volume (μM*%)*	Synergy Log Volume	Antagonism Volume (μM*%)*	Antagonism Log Volume	Conclusion
HBV DNA	COMPOUND 25	COMPOUND 3	0.654	876.5	737.8	167.96	0	0	Synergy
HBsAg	COMPOUND 25	COMPOUND 3	4.503	7793	257.49	58.62	0	0	Synergy
HBcAg	COMPOUND 25	COMPOUND 3	5.75	8850	80.56	18.34	0	0	Synergy

*at 99.9% confidence interval

#determined in an earlier separate experiment

5 Example 20

In vitro combination of Compound 3 and TAF

Study Goal

To determine whether a two-drug combination of compound **3** (a small molecule inhibitor of HBV encapsidation belonging to the sulfamoyl benzamide chemical class), and tenofovir (in the form of the prodrug tenofovir alafenamide, or TAF, a nucleotide analog inhibitor of HBV polymerase), is additive, synergistic or antagonistic *in vitro* using HBV-infected human primary hepatocytes in a cell culture model system.

Results and Conclusion

TAF (concentration range of 10.0 nM to 0.12 nM in a 3-fold dilution series and 5 point titration) was tested in combination with compound **3** (concentration range of 5560 nM to 68.64 nM in a 3-fold dilution series and 5 point titration). The average % inhibition in HBV DNA, HBsAg and HBeAg, and standard deviations of 3 replicates observed either with TAF or compound **3** treatments alone or in combination are shown in Tables 20a, 20b, and 20c as indicated below. The EC₅₀ values of TAF and compound **3** were determined in an earlier experiment and are shown in Table 20d; some variance was observed from different lots of PHH cells.

When the observed values of a two-inhibitor combination were compared to what is expected from additive interaction for the above concentration range, the combinations were found to be additive or synergistic, with no antagonism (Table 20d) as per MacSynergy II analysis and using the interpretive criteria described above by Prichard and Shipman (1992). No significant inhibition of cell viability or proliferation was observed by microscopy or CCK8 assay in the analyzed samples.

Table 20a: Effect on HBV DNA in *In Vitro* Combination of TAF and Compound 3

[DRUG]	0.00	68.64	205.93	617.7	1853.3	5560.0	AVERAGE % INHIBITION COMPOUND 3 (nM)
TAF (nM)				8	3	0	
0.70	76.31	76.66	75.83	84	83	87.22	
1.03	83.38	86.71	85.36	76.33	81.98	88.21	
0.41	28.78	50.25	43.6	56.51	77.12	86.4	
0.14	3.84	22.89	19.73	44.15	74.08	86.53	
0.05	-8.77	18.84	18.49	40.83	71.83	83.58	
0.00	0	-2.79	-5.02	34.75	66.43	85.32	

[DRUG]	0.00	68.64	205.93	617.7	1853.3	5560.0	STANDARD DEVIATION (%) COMPOUND 3 (nM)
TAF (nM)				8	3	0	
3.70	4.13	5.74	5.65	2.86	6.34	3.87	
1.20	5.26	4	1.75	3.36	2.15	1.61	
0.41	15.82	4.83	4.35	8.44	2.31	0.77	
0.14	5.2	10.08	12.17	5.9	2.81	1.93	
0.05	11.46	2.67	13.74	8.32	4	6.05	
0.00	19.74	24.58	16.02	21.37	3.11	3.19	
[DRUG]	0.00	68.64	205.93	617.7	1853.3	5560.0	ADDITIVE INHIBITION COMPOUND 3 (nM)
TAF (nM)				8	3	0	
3.70	78.31	77.7	77.22	85.85	92.72	95.82	
1.20	63.38	62.37	61.55	76.12	87.71	94.63	
0.41	28.78	26.79	25.2	53.55	76.09	88.54	
0.14	3.84	1.16	-0.96	37.28	67.72	85.88	
0.05	-8.77	-11.8	-14.23	29.06	63.49	84.03	
0.00	0	-2.79	-5.02	34.78	66.43	85.32	
[DRUG]	0	68.642	205.93	617.7	1853.3	5560	SYNERGY PLOT (89.8%)
TAF (nM)				8	3	0	
3.70	0	0	0	0	0	0	
1.20	0	0	0	0	0	-1.1215	
0.41	0	7.5844	4.9841	0	0	-0.6058	
0.14	0	0	0	0	0	0	
0.05	0	18.853	0	0	0	0	
0.00	0	0	0	0	0	0	
							Barlett's Adj. 58%
							SYNERGY 30.6
							log volume 6.94
							ANTAGONISM -1.73
							log volume -0.35

5

10 Table 20b: Effect on HBsAg in *In Vitro* Combination of TAF and Compound 3

[DRUG] TAF (nM)	0.00	68.64	205.93	617.7 8	1853.3 3	5560.0 0	AVERAGE % INHIBITION COMPOUND 3 (nM)
3.70	-6.72	6.48	7.67	0.89	29.26	52.66	
1.23	10.9 7	13.51	15.13	15.13	27.31	58.97	
0.41	11.2 9	12.8	10.81	11.93	27.47	49.79	
0.14	12.8 3	3.2	8.03	3.13	16.78	48.23	
0.05	-7.36	-0.27	0.03	7.65	24.63	50.68	
0.00	0	-16.35	-21.58	-5.12	14.6	43.83	
[DRUG] TAF (nM)	0.00	68.64	205.93	617.7 8	1853.3 3	5560.0 0	STANDARD DEVIATION (%) COMPOUND 3 (nM)
3.70	3.91	5.1	5.03	8.91	7.06	8.33	
1.23	3.52	5.17	5.31	13	7.04	5.03	
0.41	8.18	13.14	3.12	11.46	12.56	2.98	
0.14	10.9 6	14.74	11.52	2.55	6.84	7.2	
0.05	11.1 3	8.98	4.72	15.21	8.94	3.8	
0.00	22.1 7	16.06	23.58	14.67	9.83	6.94	
[DRUG] TAF (nM)	0.00	68.64	205.93	617.7 8	1853.3 3	5560.0 0	ADDITIVE INHIBITION COMPOUND 3 (nM)
3.70	-6.72	-24.17	-29.75	-12.16	8.86	40.06	
1.23	10.9 7	-3.59	-8.24	6.41	23.97	49.96	
0.41	11.2 9	-3.21	-7.85	6.75	24.24	50.17	
0.14	12.8 3	-1.42	-8.98	8.37	26.56	51.04	
0.05	-7.36	-24.9	-30.52	-12.85	8.32	39.7	
0.00	0	-16.35	-21.58	-5.12	14.6	43.83	

[DRUG]	0.00	08.64	205.93	617.7	1850.3	5560.8
TAF (nM)				8	3	0
3.70	0	12.875	20.8963	0	0	0
1.23	0	0.0865	5.89476	0	0	0
0.41	0	0	8.39208	0	0	0
0.14	0	0	0	0	0	0
0.05	0	0	15.0195	0	0	0
0.00	0	0	0	0	0	0

SYNERGY PLOT (95.9%)	
Bonferroni Adj	95%
SYNERGY	84.13
log volume	14.6
ANTAGONISM	0
log volume	0

5

10 Table 20c: Effect on HBcAg in *In Vitro* Combination of TAF and Compound 3

[DRUG]	0.00	68.29	205.7	617.2	1851.8	5555.5
TAF (nM)			8	8	5	6
3.70	11.87	6.27	25.76	19.94	27.49	61.8
1.23	9.91	11.39	10.58	18.23	26.38	55.2
0.41	1.76	1.32	-4.69	15.28	22.97	48.25
0.14	-2.78	-1.24	1.07	13.95	18.72	46.8
0.05	1.17	3.94	0.21	10.48	17.06	49.18
0.00	0	-5.05	-6.33	2.77	29.66	40.38

AVERAGE % INHIBITION COMPOUND 3 (nM)	
--	--

[DRUG]	0.00	68.99	205.7	617.2	1851.8	5555.5
TAF (nM)			8	8	5	6
3.70	8.54	19.25	17.35	14.38	11.4	3.56
1.23	13.91	1.05	5.28	6.23	11.06	5.89
0.41	18.44	7.35	9.98	4.02	7.19	2.75
0.14	11.41	19.4	4.08	12.99	5.4	4.99
0.05	16.36	5.09	6.96	4.15	9.2	7.01
0.00	28.29	2.3	6.31	5.64	11.69	8.37

STANDARD DEVIATION (%) COMPOUND 3 (nM)	
--	--

[DRUG]	0.00	68.58	205.7	647.2	1851.8	5555.5	ADDITIVE INHIBITION COMPOUND 3 (nM)
TAF (nM)			8	8	5	6	
3.70	11.87	7.42	6.29	14.31	38.83	47.46	
1.23	9.91	5.36	4.21	12.41	38.83	46.29	
0.41	1.76	-3.2	-4.46	4.46	30.9	41.43	
0.14	-2.78	-7.97	-8.29	5.07	27.7	38.72	
0.05	1.17	-3.82	-5.09	3.91	30.48	41.08	
0.02	0	-5.05	-6.33	2.77	29.66	40.38	

[DRUG]	0.00	68.58	205.7	647.2	1851.8	5555.5	SYNERGY PLOT (99.9%)
TAF (nM)			8	8	5	6	
3.70	0	0	0	0	0	2.4248	
1.23	0	5	0	0	0	0	
0.41	0	0	0	0	0	0	
0.14	0	0	0	0	0	0	
0.05	0	0	0	0	0	0	
0.02	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Table 20d: Summary of results of *in vitro* combination studies of TAF and Compound 3 in PHH cell culture system:

HBV Assay Endpoint	Inhibitor A	Inhibitor B	Inhibitor A EC ₅₀ (nM)#	Inhibitor B EC ₅₀ (nM)#	Synergy Volume (μM ² %)*	Synergy Log Volume	Antagonism Volume (μM ² %)*	Antagonism Log Volume	Conclusion
HBV DNA	TAF	COMPOUND 3	0.405	876.5	30.5	6.94	-1.73	-0.29	Synergy
HBsAg	TAF	COMPOUND 3	>100	7793	64.13	14.6	0	0	Synergy
HBcAg	TAF	COMPOUND 3	>100	8850	5.0	1.14	0	0	Additive

*at 99.9% confidence interval

#determined in an earlier separate experiment

5 Example 21

In vitro combination of IFNα2a and Compound 22

Study Goal

To determine whether a two-drug combination of compound **22** (a small molecule inhibitor of HBV encapsidation belonging to the sulfamoyl benzamide chemical class), and
 10 pegylated interferon alpha 2a (IFNα2a, an antiviral cytokine that activates innate immunity pathways in hepatocytes), is additive, synergistic or antagonistic *in vitro* using HBV-infected

human primary hepatocytes in a cell culture model system.

Results and Conclusion

IFN α 2a (concentration range of 10.0 IU/mL to 0.123 IU/mL in a 3-fold dilution series and 5 point titration) was tested in combination with compound **22** (concentration range of 5000 nM to 61.721 nM in a 3-fold dilution series and 5 point titration). The average % inhibition in HBV DNA, HBsAg and HBeAg, and standard deviations of 3 replicates observed either with IFN α 2a or compound **22** treatments alone or in combination are shown in Tables 21a, 21b, and 21c as indicated below. The EC₅₀ values of IFN α 2a and compound **22** were determined in an earlier experiment and are shown in Table 21d; some variance was observed from different lots of PHH cells.

When the observed values of a two-inhibitor combination were compared to what is expected from additive interaction for the above concentration range, the combinations were found to be additive to synergistic, with no antagonism (Table 21d) as per MacSynergy II analysis and using the interpretive criteria described above by Prichard and Shipman (1992). No significant inhibition of cell viability or proliferation was observed by microscopy or CCK8 assay in the analyzed samples.

Table 21a: Effect on HBV DNA in *In Vitro* Combination of IFN α 2a and Compound 22

[DRUG]	0.00	61.73	185.18	555.56	1696.67	5000.00	AVERAGE % INHIBITION COMPOUND 22 (μ M)
IFN α 2a IU/mL							
10.00	58	70.56	67.36	66.34	75.72	83.3	
3.33	52.39	69.79	71.36	68.3	72.61	84.76	
1.11	28.68	59.77	59.61	55.17	63.22	80.59	
0.37	6.59	44.09	42.48	42.82	61.33	75.33	
0.12	-18.56	29.97	23.99	27.7	45.63	78.65	
0.00	0	-9.02	-33.53	-13.72	22.31	69.16	

[DRUG]	0.00	61.73	185.19	555.56	1666.67	5000.00
IFNa2a						
U/ml						
10.00	7.24	3.95	9.56	19.17	3.86	4.6
3.33	11.43	3.1	4.52	7.4	11.11	4.42
1.11	18.44	2.71	2.78	22.28	8.66	1.34
0.37	33.49	11.81	2.73	7.7	14.25	1.88
0.12	23.97	16.1	11.97	16.1	9.2	2.49
0.00	35.38	12.95	29.16	24.96	22.77	2.75

[DRUG]	0.00	61.73	185.19	555.56	1666.67	5000.00
IFNa2a						
U/ml						
10.00	59	55.1	45.25	53.37	68.16	87.37
3.33	82.39	48.1	36.43	49.88	63.01	85.33
1.11	28.08	21.59	3.97	18.21	44.13	77.84
0.37	6.59	-1.84	-24.73	-6.23	27.43	71.22
0.12	-18.56	-29.25	-58.31	-34.83	7.89	63.47
0.00	0	-9.02	-33.53	-13.72	22.31	69.19

[DRUG]	0	61.729	185.19	555.56	1666.67	5000
IFNa2a						
U/ml						
10.00	0	2.28055	29.267	0	0	0
3.33	0	11.4579	20.9547	0	0	0
1.11	0	29.2614	46.491	0	0	0
0.37	0	7.96329	58.2256	23.7093	0	0
0.12	0	6.2349	42.9067	29.2809	7.462E	6.98541
0.00	0	0	0	0	0	0

Table 21b: Effect on HBsAg in *In Vitro* Combination of IFNa2a and Compound 22

[DRUG]	0.00	61.73	185.19	555.56	1666.67	5000.00	AVERAGE % INHIBITION COMPOUND 22 (µM)
IFNa2a							
U/mL							
10.00	20.1	23.86	18.44	23.51	32.47	46.3	
3.33	19.2	21.09	18.86	23.8	32.72	40.92	
1.11	8.8	17.52	19.02	18.44	28.23	41.77	
0.37	4.6	10.58	12.89	12.73	18.64	32.89	
0.12	-1.67	10.33	10.48	18.18	20.01	33.22	
0.00	0	-13.63	-10.58	-8.08	10.34	23.09	
[DRUG]	0.00	61.73	185.19	555.56	1666.67	5000.00	STANDARD DEVIATION (%) COMPOUND 22 (µM)
IFNa2a							
U/mL							
10.00	13.1	8.15	6.53	2.24	6.55	3.24	
3.33	11.12	8.23	8.23	3.93	10.55	10.22	
1.11	14.56	12.01	8.75	8.2	12.13	11.6	
0.37	8.75	7.48	17.42	8.47	12.45	15.01	
0.12	20.23	18.68	5.97	8.82	12.81	14.29	
0.00	16.83	16.23	12.8	17.72	15.11	15.81	
[DRUG]	0.00	61.73	185.19	555.56	1666.67	5000.00	ADDITIVE INHIBITION COMPOUND 22 (µM)
IFNa2a							
U/mL							
10.00	20.1	8.86	11.65	18.04	28.36	38.55	
3.33	10.2	-2.22	5.7	5.64	19.45	30.93	
1.11	8.8	-3.81	-0.85	4.17	18.23	28.86	
0.37	4.6	-8.55	-5.49	-0.25	14.46	25.63	
0.12	-1.67	-15.73	-12.43	-6.83	8.84	21.81	
0.00	0	-13.83	-10.58	-8.08	10.34	23.09	
[DRUG]	0	61.73	185.19	555.56	1666.67	5000	SYNERGY PLOT (99.9%)
IFNa2a							
U/mL							
10.00	0	0	0	0.0961	0	0	
3.33	0	0	0	6.2363	0	0	
1.11	0	0	0	0	0	0	
0.37	0	0	0	0	0	0	
0.12	0	0	3.2627	0	0	0	
			3	0	0	0	
							Bonferroni Adj. 10%
							SYNERGY 8.59
							log volume 1.96
							ANTAGONISM 0
							log volume 0

0.00	0	0	0	0	0	0
------	---	---	---	---	---	---

5

Table 21c: Effect on HBeAg in *In Vitro* Combination of IFN α 2a and Compound 22

[DRUG]	0.00	81.73	185.1	555.5	1666.6	5000.0
IFN α 2a			9	6	7	0
μ g/mL						
10.00	30.13	29.1	26.43	26.51	34.37	48.55
3.33	17.16	17.85	18	19.33	29.38	39.7
1.11	15.27	14.17	15.78	10.38	20.67	41.95
0.37	1.78	2.04	2.11	-0.98	10.34	27.11
0.12	7.42	11.7	-10.2	8.06	14.8	34.39
0.00	0	-7.2	-9.57	-8.17	5.92	20.93
AVERAGE % INHIBITION COMPOUND 22 (μ M)						
[DRUG]	0.00	81.73	185.1	555.5	1666.6	5000.0
IFN α 2a			9	6	7	0
μ g/mL						
10.00	0.33	8.25	5.02	1.12	4.12	3.3
3.33	5.81	6.25	6.16	0.03	3.41	4.79
1.11	2.91	12.64	3.62	11.98	8.87	8.83
0.37	3.5	12.74	8.62	13.47	7.91	4.83
0.12	6.8	9.72	7.43	4.72	11.48	7.25
0.00	7.56	5.63	6.88	13.23	6.51	8.89
STANDARD DEVIATION (%) COMPOUND 22 (μ M)						
[DRUG]	0.00	81.73	185.1	555.5	1666.6	5000.0
IFN α 2a			9	6	7	0
μ g/mL						
10.00	30.13	25.1	23.44	24.42	34.27	44.75
3.33	17.16	11.2	9.23	10.38	22.06	34.5
1.11	15.27	8.17	7.16	8.35	20.29	33
0.37	1.78	-8.29	-7.62	-6.24	7.59	22.34
0.12	7.42	0.75	-1.44	-0.14	12.5	26.8
0.00	0	-7.2	-9.57	-8.17	6.92	20.93
ADDITIVE INHIBITION COMPOUND 22 (μ M)						

[DRUG]	0	61.72	185.1	585.5	1686.7	5500
IFN α 2a	0	0	0	0	0	0
U/mL						
10.00	0	0	0	0	0	0
3.33	0	0	0	0	0	0
1.11	0	0	0	0	0	0
0.37	0	0	0	0	0	0
0.12	0	0	0	0	0	0
0.02	0	0	0	0	0	0

SYNERGY PLOT (99.9%)	
Bordignon Adj	99%
SYNERGY	0
log volume	0
ANTAGONISM	0
log volume	0

Table 21d: Summary of results of *in vitro* combination studies of IFN α 2a and Compound 22 in PHH cell culture system:

HBV Assay Endpoint	Inhibitor A	Inhibitor B	Inhibitor A EC ₅₀ (IU/mL)#	Inhibitor B EC ₅₀ (nM)#	Synergy Volume (μM ² %)*	Synergy Log Volume	Antagonism Volume (μM ² %)*	Antagonism Log Volume	Conclusion
HBV DNA	IFN α 2a	COMPOUND 22	2.154	1020	311.72	70.96	0	0	Synergy
HBsAg	IFN α 2a	COMPOUND 22	13.8	12,800	8.59	1.96	0	0	Additive
HBcAg	IFN α 2a	COMPOUND 22	10.24	10,740	0	0	0	0	Additive

*at 99.9% confidence interval

#determined in an earlier separate experiment

5 Example 22

In vitro combination of Compound 22 and TAF

Study Goal

To determine whether a two-drug combination of compound **22** (a small molecule inhibitor of HBV encapsidation belonging to the sulfamoyl benzamide chemical class), and tenofovir (in the form of the prodrug tenofovir alafenamide, or TAF, a nucleotide analog inhibitor of HBV polymerase), is additive, synergistic or antagonistic *in vitro* using HBV-infected human primary hepatocytes in a cell culture model system.

Results and Conclusion

TAF (concentration range of 10.0 nM to 0.12 nM in a 3-fold dilution series and 5 point titration) was tested in combination with compound **22** (concentration range of 5000 nM to

61.721 nM in a 3-fold dilution series and 5 point titration). The average % inhibition in HBV DNA, HBsAg and HBeAg, and standard deviations of 3 replicates observed either with compound **22** or TAF treatments alone or in combination are shown in Tables 22a, 22b, and 22c as indicated below. The EC₅₀ values of TAF and compound **22** were determined in an earlier experiment and are shown in Table 22d; some variance was observed from different lots of PHH cells.

When the observed values of a two-inhibitor combination were compared to what is expected from additive interaction for the above concentration range, the combinations were found to be additive, with no antagonism (Table 22d) as per MacSynergy II analysis and using the interpretive criteria described above by Prichard and Shipman (1992). No significant inhibition of cell viability or proliferation was observed by microscopy or CCK8 assay in the analyzed samples.

Table 22a: Effect on HBV DNA in *In Vitro* Combination of Compound 22 and TAF

[DRUG]	0	61.72 0	185.1 0	555.56 0	1666.7 0	5000 0	AVERAGE % INHIBITION COMPOUND 22 (nM)
TAF (nM)							
10.00	56.2 1	60.62	59.41	66.66	65.77	71.2 6	
3.33	40.1 6	51.09	48.53	50.14	55.25	70.8 5	
1.11	4.95	25.5	30.09	25.21	42.82	62.1 4	
0.37	-1.32	5.92	11.85	14.66	29.37	54.2 4	
0.12	-2.6	-5.22	6.12	11.67	36.6	52.6 5	
0.00	0	2.38	-3.33	8.01	27.98	54.8 6	
[DRUG]	0	61.72 0	185.1 0	555.56 0	1666.7 0	5000 0	STANDARD DEVIATION (%) COMPOUND 22 (nM)
TAF (nM)							
10.00	1.32 12.3	8.36	3.9	10.1	3.39	11.5 7	
3.33	4 25.3	15.26	5.42	4.36	13.68	7.66 11.3	
1.11	8	8.61	26.31	18.26	6.64	3	
0.37	8.11	16.64	16.41	12.37	11.31	8.83 10.7	
0.12	3.28	6.41	13.44	11.64	0.94	6 17.1	
0.00	0.19	7.49	13.42	18.44	5.93	2	

[DRUG]	0	61.72 8	185.1 9	555.56 9	1666.7 7	5000
TAF (nM)						
10.00	80.2 1	51.4	48.55	54.2	64.14	77.4 3
3.33	45.1 6	41.58	38.17	44.85	56.9	72.8 7
1.11	4.95	7.21	1.78	12.56	31.54	56.8
0.37	-1.92	0.51	-0.31	6.24	28.6	53.7 9
0.12	-2.6	-0.16	-0.02	5.82	25.11	53.4 8
0.00	0	2.38	-1.33	8.01	27.98	54.6 6

[DRUG]	0	61.72 8	185.1 9	555.56 9	1666.7 7	5000
TAF (nM)						
10.00	0	0	0	0	0	0
3.33	0	0	0	0.7754 2	0	0
1.11	0	0	0	0	0	0
0.37	0	0	0	0	0	0
0.12	0	0	0	0	7.2984 6	0
0.00	0	0	0	0	0	0

ADDITIVE INHIBITION
COMPOUND 22 (nM)

SYNERGY PLOT (98.9%)

Bortezomib Adj. 98%

SYNERGY 8.07

log volume 1.84

ANTAGONISM 0

log volume 5

5

10

Table 22b: Effect on HBsAg in *In Vitro* Combination of Compound 22 and TAF

[DRUG]	0	61.72 8	185.1 9	555.5 9	1666. 7	5000
TAF (nM)						
10	7.97	3.97	21.33	7.89	24.54	38.54
3.333333 3	9.06	-6.48	16.7	16.53	24.27	44.07
1.111111 1	20.81	13.85	21.8	20.98	27.18	46.11
0.370370 4	10.78	-3.62	10.84	10.32	23.21	45.05
0.123456 6	29.52	19.98	14.56	21.8	21.67	46.57
0	0	-0.32	2.37	-2.17	17.68	20.73

AVERAGE % INHIBITION
COMPOUND 22 (nM)

[DRUG]	0	61.72 8	185.1 9	555.5 6	1666 7	5000	STANDARD DEVIATION (%)
TAF (nM)							COMPOUND 22 (nM)
10	5.77	2.84	10.6	6.46	2.33	9.64	
3.333333 3	13.78	10.12	9.21	7.53	7.28	4.28	
1.111111 1	6.53	6.36	15.1	9.96	4.2	2.72	
0.370370 4	4.42	15.44	4.26	7.98	7.62	2.68	
0.123456 6	3.87	4.25	4.49	3.91	8.82	1.51	
0	0.59	19.01	7.88	14.89	15.32	16.75	
[DRUG]	0	61.72 8	185.1 9	555.5 6	1666 7	5000	ADDITIVE INHIBITION
TAF (nM)							COMPOUND 22 (nM)
10	7.87	7.68	10.15	5.97	24.24	27.06	
3.333333 3	9.06	8.77	11.22	7.09	25.14	27.91	
1.111111 1	20.81	20.56	22.69	19.09	34.81	37.23	
0.370370 4	10.78	10.49	12.89	8.84	25.55	25.28	
0.123456 6	29.82	29.6	31.48	28.3	42.23	44.37	
0	0	-9.32	2.37	-2.17	17.68	20.73	
[DRUG]	0	61.72 8	185.1 9	555.5 6	1666 7	5000	SYNERGY PLOT (99.8%)
TAF (nM)							Bonferroni Adj. 98%
0							
10	0	0	0	0	0	0	SYNERGY 9.66
3.333333 3	0	0	0	0	0	2.1403 4	log volume 2.07
1.111111 1	0	0	0	0	0	0	
0.370370 4	0	0	0	0	0	6.9501 2	ANTAGONISM -2.14
0.123456 6	0	0	2.143 4	0	0	0	log volume -0.49
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Table 22c: Effect on HBeAg in *In Vitro* Combination of Compound 22 and TAF

[DRUG]	0	61.72 8	185.1 9	555.5 6	1666 7	5000	AVERAGE % INHIBITION COMPOUND 22 (nM)
TAF (nM)							
10.00	22.86	-0.79	17.72	8.41	23.89	42.03	
3.33	19.89	-14.8	8.11	3.2	24.12	36.2	
1.11	22.56	1.31	15.81	26.43	22.71	49.56	
0.37	9.8	-14.54	-2.63	19.7	21.6	42.03	
0.12	26.61	17.84	15.03	21.04	26.27	50.3	
0.00	0	-6.71	-12.41	-5.06	10.1	29.74	
[DRUG]	0	61.72 8	185.1 9	555.5 6	1666 7	5000	STANDARD DEVIATION (%) COMPOUND 22 (nM)
TAF (nM)							
10.00	19.83	13.7	2.25	17.67	11.85	8.64	
3.33	9.59	13.32	15.74	3.59	14.71	9.54	
1.11	8.99	14.21	15.15	10.78	1.53	2.78	
0.37	5.28	34.36	16.86	12.05	12.45	7.4	
0.12	4.71	14.39	8.61	5.08	4.18	4.19	
0.00	5.53	26.25	10.69	17.17	20.78	11.65	
[DRUG]	0	61.72 8	185.1 9	555.5 6	1666 7	5000	ADDITIVE INHIBITION COMPOUND 22 (nM)
TAF (nM)							
10.00	22.86	17.67	13.28	18.95	30.54	45.78	
3.33	19.89	14.3	9.72	16.63	27.8	43.57	
1.11	22.56	17.36	12.96	18.64	39.38	45.59	
0.37	9.8	3.85	-1.28	5.34	19	38.7	
0.12	26.61	21.69	17.5	22.9	34.02	46.44	
0.00	0	-6.71	-12.41	-5.06	10.1	29.74	
[DRUG]	0	61.72 8	185.1 9	555.5 6	1666 7	5000	SYNERGY PLOT (99.8%) Bartlett's Adj. 98%
TAF (nM)							
10.00	0	0	0	0	0	0	SYNERGY 0
3.33	0	0	0	0.615 3	0	0	log volume 0
1.11	0	0	0	0	2.632 8	0	
0.37	0	0	0	0	0	0	ANTAGONISM -3.25
0.12	0	0	0	0	0	0	log volume -0.74

0.00	0	0	0	0	0	0	
------	---	---	---	---	---	---	--

Table 22d: Summary of results of *in vitro* combination studies of Compound 22 and TAF in PHH cell culture system:

HBV Assay Endpoint	Inhibitor A	Inhibitor B	Inhibitor A EC ₅₀ (nM)#	Inhibitor B EC ₅₀ (nM)#	Synergy Volume (μM ² %)*	Synergy Log Volume	Antagonism Volume (μM ² %)*	Antagonism Log Volume	Conclusion
HBV DNA	TAF	COMPOUND 22	0.405	1020	8.07	1.84	0	0	Additive
HBsAg	TAF	COMPOUND 22	>100	12,800	9.09	2.07	-2.14	-0.49	Additive
HBeAg	TAF	COMPOUND 22	>100	10,740	0	0	-3.25	-0.74	Additive

*at 99.9% confidence interval

#determined in an earlier separate experiment

5

Example 23

In vitro combination of Compound 22 and Compound 25

Study Goal

To determine whether a two-drug combination of compound **22** (a small molecule inhibitor of HBV encapsidation belonging to the sulfamoyl benzamide chemical class), and compound **25** (a small molecule inhibitor of HBV DNA, HBsAg and HBeAg, belonging to the dihydroquinolizinone chemical class), is additive, synergistic or antagonistic *in vitro* using HBV-infected human primary hepatocytes in a cell culture model system.

Results and Conclusion

Compound **25** (concentration range of 10.0 nM to 0.12 nM in a 3-fold dilution series and 5 point titration) was tested in combination with compound **22** (concentration range of 5000 nM to 61.73 nM in a 3-fold dilution series and 5 point titration). The average % inhibition in HBV DNA, HBsAg and HBeAg, and standard deviations of 3 replicates observed either with compound **25** or compound **22** treatments alone or in combination are shown in Tables 23a, 23b, and 23c as indicated below. The EC₅₀ values of compound **25** and compound **22** were determined in an earlier experiment and are shown in Table 23d; some variance was observed

from different lots of PHH cells.

When the observed values of a two-inhibitor combination were compared to what is expected from additive interaction for the above concentration range, the combinations were found to be synergistic or additive, with no antagonism (Table 23d) as per MacSynergy II analysis and using the interpretive criteria described above by Prichard and Shipman (1992). No significant inhibition of cell viability or proliferation was observed by microscopy or CCK8 assay in the analyzed samples.

Table 23a: Effect on HBV DNA in *In Vitro* Combination of Compound 22 and Compound 25

[DRUG]	0.00	61.73	185.19	555.56	1666.67	5000.00	AVERAGE % INHIBITION COMPOUND 22 (nM)
COMPOUND 25							
(nM)							
10.00	37.39	54.71	52.49	63.54	67.1	85.44	
3.33	18.41	50.43	52.25	53.21	62.83	82.05	
1.11	19.21	32.08	42.5	41.58	57.56	80.93	
0.37	46.48	30.71	23.72	21.3	52.22	73.23	
0.12	42.82	26.46	16.46	27.69	42.07	74.04	
0.00	0	-11.75	-8.12	-12.7	17.94	63.06	
[DRUG]	0.00	61.73	185.19	555.56	1666.67	5000.00	STANDARD DEVIATION (%) COMPOUND 22 (nM)
COMPOUND 25							
(nM)							
10.00	7.33	4.11	2.57	4.94	5.09	1.85	
3.33	8.98	4.36	7.16	4.68	3.23	3.21	
1.11	35.51	7.87	5.88	13.48	7.26	1.34	
0.37	51.6	8.48	0.9	21	7.5	1.71	
0.12	21.05	7.83	6	5.3	0.16	2.16	
0.00	40.03	5.71	4.39	11.46	8.57	2.52	

[DRUG]	0.00	81.73	185.18	555.56	1886.67	5000.00
COMPOUND 25						
(nM)						
10.00	37.39	30.03	31.88	29.44	45.62	75.87
3.33	16.41	6.59	8.79	5.79	31.41	69.12
1.11	19.21	-33.22	-30.08	-34.35	2.18	55.96
0.37	46.48	-63.69	-55.84	-65.08	-20.2	45.89
0.12	42.82	-56.6	-55.85	-60.96	-17.2	47.24
0.00	0	-11.75	-9.12	-12.7	17.94	63.08

[DRUG]	0	81.728	185.19	555.56	1886.7	5000
COMPOUND 25						
(nM)						
10.00	0	11.164	12.3521	17.8426	1.72981	2.15255
3.33	0	29.4912	18.8954	32.0181	20.7901	2.39589
1.11	0	39.3998	78.3421	31.9673	31.4673	20.5501
0.37	0	73.1401	80.5991	17.289	47.7375	21.7124
0.12	0	60.2915	52.564	71.2077	58.7434	19.6914
0.00	0	0	0	0	0	0

5

10 Table 23b: Effect on HBsAg in *In Vitro* Combination of Compound 22 and Compound 25

[DRUG]	0.00	81.73	185.18	555.56	1886.67	5000.00
			5	6	7	8
10.00	42.95	47.96	44.95	47.05	56.23	64.25
3.33	20.81	33.92	29.53	31.58	44.61	48.94
1.11	26.4	29.53	17.24	26.62	40.43	48.49
0.37	12.83	20.99	10.46	16.89	34.42	42.55
0.12	9.32	12.34	11.87	16.52	33.87	42.69
0.00	0	-9.16	-10.21	-3.62	20.61	30.96

[DRUG]	0.00	61.73	185.1	555.5	1586.6	5000.0
COMPOUND						
25						
(nM)						
10.00	6.31	7.49	10.62	7.96	3.9	3.54
3.33	6.77	3.56	12.38	9.92	3.89	7.17
1.11	6.88	5.71	15.84	10.95	8.57	9.32
0.37	1.48	4.58	17.71	9.5	7.05	8.21
0.12	7.25	4.15	9.26	8.38	9.2	6.25
0.00	14.86	17.35	15.2	14.87	11.14	12.14
STANDARD DEVIATION (%)						
COMPOUND						
22 (nM)						
[DRUG]	0.00	61.73	185.1	555.5	1586.6	5000.0
COMPOUND						
25						
(nM)						
10.00	42.95	37.72	37.13	40.77	54.71	60.61
3.33	20.81	13.59	12.72	17.78	37.13	45.33
1.11	26.4	19.65	18.88	23.59	41.57	49.19
0.37	12.93	4.95	4.04	5.5	39.88	39.89
0.12	8.32	1.91	5.05	5.86	28.01	37.38
0.00	0	-9.15	-10.21	-3.82	20.61	30.96
ADDITIVE INHIBITION						
COMPOUND						
22 (nM)						
[DRUG]	0	61.73	185.1	555.5	1586.6	5000
COMPOUND						
25						
(nM)						
10.00	0	0	0	0	0	0
3.33	0	8.64494	0	0	0	0
1.11	0	0	0	0	0	0
0.37	0	1.03304	0	0	0	0
0.12	0	0	0	0	0	0
0.00	0	0	0	0	0	0
SYNERGY PLOT (99.9%)						
Bonferroni Adj. 99%						
SYNERGY 9.58						
log volume 2.2						
ANTAGONISM 0						
log volume 0						

Table 23c: Effect on HBeAg in *In Vitro* Combination of Compound 22 and Compound 25

[DRUG]	0.00	61.73	185.19	555.5 6	1666.6 7	5000.00	AVERAGE % INHIBITION COMPOUND 22 (nM)
10.00	38.42	45.7	38.35	42.74	42.85	52.75	
3.33	13.94	29.89	24.19	23.42	24.57	39.67	
1.11	14.98	23.14	18.39	20.55	25.39	36.15	
0.37	2.8	7.34	7.64	4.51	17.83	27.05	
0.12	4.8	7.81	10.06	9.31	20.68	33.46	
0.00	0	-16.81	-14.59	-7.23	8.5	21.68	
[DRUG]	0.00	61.73	185.19	555.5 6	1666.6 7	5000.00	STANDARD DEVIATION (%) COMPOUND 22 (nM)
COMPOUND 25 (nM)							
10.00	3.97	4.42	6.82	8.31	4.69	2.23	
3.33	9.3	1.4	6.29	15.17	11.71	2.03	
1.11	6.16	7.56	9.8	11.54	8.18	9.71	
0.37	10.44	7.8	10.99	14.23	7.82	10.34	
0.12	14.29	8.35	1.66	17.07	9.08	4.79	
0.00	10.71	11.49	8.24	11.36	4.94	6.96	
[DRUG]	0.00	61.73	185.19	555.5 6	1666.6 7	5000.00	ADDITIVE INHIBITION COMPOUND 22 (nM)
COMPOUND 25 (nM)							
10.00	28.42	16.39	17.88	23.24	34.5	43.94	
3.33	13.94	-0.93	1.38	7.72	21.26	32.6	
1.11	14.98	6.66	2.58	8.83	22.21	33.41	
0.37	2.8	-13.42	-11.27	-4.12	11.15	23.65	
0.12	4.8	-11.2	-9.09	-2.08	12.69	25.44	
0.00	0	-16.81	-14.59	-7.23	8.5	21.68	
[DRUG]	0	61.728	185.19	555.5 6	1666.7	5000	SYNERGY PLOT (99.9%)
COMPOUND 25 (nM)							Bonferroni Adj. 98%
10.00	0	14.783 8	0	0	0	1.47107	SYNERGY 57.43
3.33	0	25.012 8	2.10961	0	0	0.38927	log volume 13.07
1.11	0	0	0	0	0	0	ANTAGONISM 0
0.37	0	0	0	0	0	0	log volume 0
0.12	0	0	13.6853	0	0	0	
0.00	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Table 23d: Summary of results of *in vitro* combination studies of Compound 22 and Compound 25 in PHH cell culture system:

HBV Assay Endpoint	Inhibitor A	Inhibitor B	Inhibitor A EC ₅₀ (nM)#	Inhibitor B EC ₅₀ (nM)#	Synergy Volume (μM ² %)*	Synergy Log Volume	Antagonism Volume (μM ² %)*	Antagonism Log Volume	Conclusion
HBV DNA	COMPOUND 25	COMPOUND 22	0.6535	1030	846.13	19.62	0	0	Synergy
HBsAg	COMPOUND 25	COMPOUND 22	4.593	12,800	9.68	2.2	0	0	Additive
HBeAg	COMPOUND 25	COMPOUND 22	5.75	10,740	57.43	13.07	0	0	Synergy

*at 99.9% confidence interval

#determined in an earlier separate experiment

5

Example 24

In vitro combination of IFNα2a and Compound 3

Study Goal

To determine whether a two-drug combination of compound **3**, and pegylated interferon alpha 2a (IFNα2a, an antiviral cytokine that activates innate immunity pathways in hepatocytes), is additive, synergistic or antagonistic *in vitro* using HBV-infected human primary hepatocytes in a cell culture model system.

Results and Conclusion

IFNα2a (concentration range of 10.0 IU/mL to 0.123 IU/mL in a 3-fold dilution series and 5 point titration) was tested in combination with compound **3** (concentration range of 5000 nM to 61.73 nM in a 3-fold dilution series and 5 point titration). The average % inhibition in HBV DNA, HBsAg and HBeAg, and standard deviations of 3 replicates observed either with IFNα2a or compound **3** treatments alone or in combination are shown in Tables 24a, 24b, and 24c as indicated below. The EC₅₀ values of IFNα2a and compound **3** were determined in an earlier experiment and are shown in Table 24d; some variance was observed from different lots of PHH cells.

When the observed values of a two-inhibitor combination were compared to what is

expected from additive interaction for the above concentration range, the combinations were found to be synergistic, with no antagonism (Table 24d) as per MacSynergy II analysis and using the interpretive criteria described above by Prichard and Shipman (1992). No significant inhibition of cell viability or proliferation was observed by microscopy or CCK8 assay in the

5 analyzed samples.

Table 24a: Effect on HBV DNA in *In Vitro* Combination of IFN α 2a and Compound 3

[DRUG]	0.00	51.73	125.19	555.56	1666.67	5000.00	AVERAGE % INHIBITION COMPOUND 3 (μ M)
IFN α 2a							
IU/mL							
10.00	61.87	71.15	80.53	79.65	80.46	83.13	
5.00	59.58	65.87	74.49	75.8	84.91	87.1	
1.11	43.03	53.87	58.99	73.99	83.9	86.29	
0.37	38.46	46.68	50.62	61.26	79.98	87.96	
0.12	8.4	36.63	36.65	50.15	78.43	86.51	
0.00	0	-11.71	4.14	26.47	69.39	84.26	
[DRUG]	0.00	51.73	125.19	555.56	1666.67	5000.00	STANDARD DEVIATION (%) COMPOUND 3 (μ M)
IFN α 2a							
IU/mL							
10.00	5.9	5.47	5.52	2.67	4.37	2.84	
5.00	6.53	2.04	2.64	4.62	3.33	1.29	
1.11	6.9	8.86	6.4	0.65	1.68	1.74	
0.37	4.8	5.86	4.86	5.2	2.07	0.96	
0.12	10.36	7.77	6.24	3.95	6.78	1.78	
0.00	15.33	3.13	10.75	14.76	3.89	2.26	
[DRUG]	0.00	51.73	125.19	555.56	1666.67	5000.00	ADDITIVE INHIBITION COMPOUND 3 (μ M)
IFN α 2a							
IU/mL							
10.00	61.87	57.4	63.45	71.96	86.33	94	
5.00	59.58	55.16	61.54	70.5	87.72	93.69	
1.11	43.03	36.36	45.39	58.11	82.56	91.03	
0.37	38.46	31.25	41.01	54.75	81.16	90.31	
0.12	8.4	-2.33	12.19	32.65	71.96	85.58	
0.00	0	-11.71	4.14	26.47	69.39	84.26	

[DRUG]	0	61.728	185.19	555.56	1666.7	5000	SYNERGY PLOT (99.9%)
IFN α 2a IU/mL							
10.00	0	0	0	0	0	-1.5236	Bartlett's Adj. 95%
3.33	0	3.97836	4.26176	0	0	-2.3446	
1.11	0	0	0	12.6827	0	0	SYNERGY 34.73
0.37	0	0	0	0	0	0	
0.12	0	5.32853	3.92416	4.59055	0	0	log volume 7.51
0.00	0	0	0	0	0	0	
							ANTAGONISM -3.87
							log volume -0.88

5

10 Table 24b: Effect on HBsAg in *In Vitro* Combination of IFN α 2a and Compound 3

[DRUG]	0.00	61.73	185.19	555.56	1666.7	5000.0	AVERAGE % INHIBITION COMPOUND 3 (μ M)
IFN α 2a IU/mL							
10.00	24.94	33.38	33.83	39.7	49.84	67.18	
3.33	12.8	24.89	29.71	34.46	45.53	64.86	
1.11	14.81	22.82	25.09	35.42	44.87	67.18	
0.37	6.3	8.75	17.87	27.62	42.08	61.42	
0.12	1.56	10.13	15.07	22.16	42.08	62.05	
0.00	0	-5.45	-1.46	4.63	22.4	51.86	
[DRUG]	0.00	61.73	185.19	555.56	1666.7	5000.0	STANDARD DEVIATION (%) COMPOUND 3 (μ M)
IFN α 2a IU/mL							
10.00	24.86	7.76	9.83	15.02	12.81	9.59	
3.33	18.96	8.14	7.32	2.01	3.5	5.21	
1.11	20.91	4.74	6.41	3.05	5.38	4.36	
0.37	15.28	4.3	7.35	8.74	6.16	3.9	
0.12	19.47	3.75	5.67	7.78	7.65	6.59	
0.00	29.27	8.81	11.41	18.39	12.21	10.75	

[DRUG]	0.00	61.73	185.19	565.56	1666.67	5000.00
IFNα2a						
μM						
10.00	24.94	20.82	23.64	26.42	41.75	63.87
3.33	12.8	8.61	11.53	16.84	32.33	58.02
1.11	14.91	10.34	13.67	18.85	33.67	59.64
0.37	6.9	1.79	5.64	11.21	27.75	55.18
0.12	1.66	-3.84	0.12	6.12	23.61	52.61
0.00	0	-5.49	-1.48	4.63	22.4	51.86

[DRUG]	0	61.728	185.19	565.56	1666.67	5000
IFNα2a						
μM						
10.00	0	0	0	0	0	0
3.33	0	0	0	11.0051	1.6815	0
1.11	0	0	0	7.53245	0	0
0.37	0	0	0	0	0	0
0.12	0	1.62875	2.26463	0	0	0
0.00	0	0	0	0	0	0

ADDITIONAL INHIBITION COMPOUND 3 (μM)	
SYNERGY PLOT (99.9%)	
Bonferroni Adj.	98%
SYNERGY	24.11
log volume	5.43
ANTAGONISM	0
log volume	0

5

10 Table 24c: Effect on HBeAg in *In Vitro* Combination of IFNα2a and Compound 3

[DRUG]	0.00	61.73	185.19	565.56	1666.67	5000.00
IFNα2a						
μM						
10.00	32.8	31.53	34.56	37.16	47.83	64.68
3.33	14.38	25.43	28.01	36.3	39.42	61.88
1.11	19.32	21.29	25.66	31.93	49.01	62.09
0.37	-2.24	6.43	8.53	18.84	28.32	53.12
0.12	-8.5	6.23	12.46	18.83	30.27	54.05
0.00	0	-11.14	-4.9	-1.02	12.42	42.06

[DRUG]	0.00	01.73	185.19	555.56	1868.67	5000.00	STANDARD DEVIATION (%) COMPOUND 3 (μ M)
IFNa2a							
10.00	6.87	8.73	5.55	4.84	7.1	3.14	
3.33	4.97	5.37	7.42	8.41	7.15	1.79	
1.11	7.88	5.45	5.22	7.83	7.94	3.23	
0.37	1.9	2.87	4.47	11.64	7.71	1.32	
0.12	18.48	5.14	3.32	4.52	1.47	2.18	
0.00	8.69	17.88	3.21	3.3	4.7	7	

[DRUG]	0.00	01.73	185.19	555.56	1868.67	5000.00	ADDITIVE INHIBITION COMPOUND 3 (μ M)
IFNa2a							
10.00	32.8	25.31	28.51	32.11	41.15	61.06	
3.33	14.38	4.84	10.18	13.51	25.01	50.39	
1.11	18.32	10.33	15.37	18.5	29.34	53.25	
0.37	-2.24	-13.83	-7.25	-3.28	10.46	40.76	
0.12	-8.5	-21.7	-14.87	-10.62	4.1	38.56	
0.00	0	-11.14	-4.9	-1.02	12.42	42.05	

[DRUG]	0	01.728	185.19	555.56	1868.7	5000	SYNERGY PLOT (89.9%)
IFNa2a							Bortezomib Adj. 88%
10.00	0	0	0	0	0	0	SYNERGY 103.84
3.33	0	2.81732	0	0	0	5.58911	log volume 23.49
1.11	0	0	0	0	0	0	
0.37	0	10.6148	2.06923	0	0	8.67408	ANTAGONISM 0
0.12	0	11.0143	16.733	13.7747	21.3322	10.3156	log volume 0
0.00	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Table 24d: Summary of results of *in vitro* combination studies of IFN α 2a and Compound 3 in PHH cell culture system:

HBV Assay Endpoint	Inhibitor A	Inhibitor B	Inhibitor A EC ₅₀ (IU/mL)#	Inhibitor B EC ₅₀ (nM)#	Synergy Volume (μM ² %)*	Synergy Log Volume	Antagonism Volume (μM ² %)*	Antagonism Log Volume	Conclusion
HBV DNA	IFN α 2a	COMPOUND 3	2.134	876.5	34.73	7.91	-3.87	-0.88	Synergy
HBsAg	IFN α 2a	COMPOUND 3	13.8	7793	24.11	5.49	0	0	Synergy
HBcAg	IFN α 2a	COMPOUND 3	10.24	8580	103.04	23.46	0	0	Synergy

*at 99.9% confidence interval

#determined in an earlier separate experiment

Example 25

5 *In vitro* Combination of TAF and SIRNA-NP

Study Goal

To determine whether two drug combinations of tenofovir (in the form of the prodrug tenofovir alafenamide, or TAF, a nucleotide analog inhibitor of HBV polymerase), and SIRNA-NP, an siRNA intended to facilitate potent knockdown of all viral mRNA transcripts and viral antigens, is additive, synergistic or antagonistic *in vitro* using an HBV cell culture model system.

In vitro Combination in HepDE19 Experimental Protocol

In vitro combination studies were conducted using the method of Prichard and Shipman (1990) (Prichard MN, Shipman C, Jr. 1990. A three-dimensional model to analyze drug-drug interactions. Antiviral Res 14:181-205 AND Prichard MN. 1992. MacSynergy II, University of Michigan). The HepDE19 cell line was developed as described in Guo *et al.* (2007)(Guo H, Jiang D, Zhou T, Cuconati A, Block TM, Guo JT. 2007. Characterization of the intracellular deproteinized relaxed circular DNA of hepatitis B virus: an intermediate of covalently closed circular DNA formation. J Virol 81:12472-12484). It is a human hepatoma cell line stably transfected with the HBV genome, and which can express HBV pregenomic RNA and support HBV rcDNA (relaxed circular DNA) synthesis in a tetracycline-regulated manner. HepDE19 cells were plated in 96 well tissue-culture treated microtiter plates in DMEM/F12 medium supplemented with 10% fetal bovine serum + 1% penicillin-streptomycin without tetracycline

and incubated in a humidified incubator at 37°C and 5%CO₂ overnight. Next day, the cells were switched to fresh medium and treated with inhibitor A and inhibitor B, at concentration range in the vicinity of their respective EC₅₀ values, and incubated for a duration of 7 days in a humidified incubator at 37°C and 5% CO₂. The inhibitors were either diluted in 100% DMSO (TAF) or growth medium (SIRNA-NP) and the final DMSO concentration in the assay was ≤0.5%. The two inhibitors were tested both singly as well as in combinations in a checkerboard fashion such that each concentration of inhibitor A was combined with each concentration of inhibitor B to determine their combination effects on inhibition of rcDNA production. Following a 48 hour-incubation, the level of rcDNA present in the inhibitor-treated wells was measured using a bDNA assay (Affymetrix) with HBV specific custom probe set and manufacturer's instructions. The RLU data generated from each well was calculated as % inhibition of the untreated control wells and analyzed using the MacSynergy II program to determine whether the combinations were synergistic, additive or antagonistic using the interpretive guidelines established by Prichard and Shipman as follows: Synergy volumes <25 μM²% (log volume <2) at 95% CI= probably insignificant; 25-50 μM²% (log volume >2 and < 5) = minor but significant 50-100 μM²% (log volume >5 and <9) = moderate, may be important *in vivo*; Over 100 μM²% (log volume >9) = strong synergy, probably important *in vivo*; volumes approaching 1000 μM²% (log volume >90) = unusually high, check data. Concurrently, the effect of inhibitor combinations on cell viability was assessed using replicate plates that were used to determine the ATP content as a measure of cell viability using the Cell-TiterGlo reagent (Promega) as per manufacturer's instructions.

Results and Conclusion

TAF (concentration range of 200.0 nM to 0.781 nM in a 2-fold dilution series and 9 point titration) was tested in combination with SIRNA-NP (concentration range of 60 ng/mL to 0.741 ng/mL in a 3-fold dilution series and 5 point titration). The average % inhibition in rcDNA and standard deviations of 4 replicates observed either with TAF or SIRNA-NP treatments alone or in combination is shown in Table 25A. The EC₅₀ values of TAF and SIRNA-NP are shown in Table 25B. When the observed values of two inhibitor combination were compared to what is expected from additive interaction (Table 25A) for the above concentration range, the combinations were found to be additive, with no antagonism (Table 25B) as per MacSynergy II

analysis and using the interpretive criteria described above by Prichard and Shipman (1992). No significant inhibition of cell viability or proliferation was observed by microscopy or Cell-TiterGlo assay in the analyzed samples.

S

Table 25A: *In vitro* Combination of Tenofovir Alafenamide and SIRNA-NP

[DRUG]	0	0.781	1.563	3.125	6.250	12.500	25.00	50.00	100.00	200.000	AVERAGE % INHIBITION
SIRNA-NP (ng/mL)											TAF (nM)
60	98.1	9	98.66	98.73	98.87	99.33	99.41	99.4	99.5	99.58	99.69
20.000	96.4	2	95.42	96.67	97.25	98.09	98.71	98.41	98.86	99.28	99.49
6.667	88.0	2	88.65	91.24	91.67	94.4	95.11	95.04	95.97	98.26	98.98
2.222	80.1	8	72.86	78.16	81.28	82.7	87.98	87.09	91.03	95.81	98.08
0.741	53.0	5	55.46	55.43	62.01	63.65	78.75	72.62	82.47	90.47	96.24
0	0	-4.76	3.48	0.6	16.59	28.61	20.04	63.2	77.56	89.93	
[DRUG]	0	0.781	1.5625	3.125	6.25	12.5	25	50	100	200	STANDARD DEVIATION (%)
SIRNA-NP (ng/mL)											TAF (nM)
60	0.84	9.48	0.63	0.55	0.17	0.23	0.1	0.06	0.04	0.1	
20.000	1.67	2.02	1.62	1.42	0.82	0.32	0.56	0.14	0.1	0.06	
6.667	2.35	3.58	4.19	5.97	1.68	8.94	1.48	0.87	0.51	0.12	
2.222	3.54	7.95	10.29	9.62	3.94	3.27	3.67	1.49	0.57	0.48	
0.741	12.8	2	16.87	11.3	11.62	8.42	10.02	1.77	3.4	0.5	0.83
0	0	15.54	15.63	12.12	19.07	9.89	8.58	4.92	2.79	2.12	
[DRUG]	0	0.781	1.5625	3.125	6.25	12.5	25	50	100	200	ADDITIVE INHIBITION
SIRNA-NP (ng/mL)											TAF (nM)
60	98.1	9	98.1	98.25	98.2	98.38	98.71	98.55	99.15	99.59	99.62
20.000	96.4	2	96.25	96.54	96.44	96.8	97.44	97.14	98.32	99.2	99.64
6.667	88.0	2	87.45	88.44	88.09	88.29	91.45	90.42	94.36	97.32	98.79
2.222	80.1	8	79.24	80.87	80.3	82.28	85.85	84.15	90.72	95.56	98
0.741	53.0	5	50.82	53.29	53.33	58.02	66.48	62.46	78.03	89.48	95.27
0	0	-4.76	3.48	0.6	16.59	28.61	20.04	63.2	77.59	89.93	

[DRUG]	0	0.78	1.56	3.13	6.25	12.50	25.00	50	100	200	SYNERGY PLOT (99.9%) <i>Bonferroni</i> <i>Adj.</i> 98% SYNERGY 6.28 <i>log volume</i> 0.9 ANTAGONISM 0 <i>log volume</i> 0
SIRNA-NP (ng/mL)											
80.0	0	0	0	0	0.386	0	0.520	0.152	0	0	
20.000	0	0	0	0	0	0.216	0	0.076	0	0	
6.667	0	0	0	0	0	0.866	0	0	0	0	
2.222	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
0.741	0	0	0	0	0	0	4.334	0	0	0	
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Table 25B: Summary of results of *in vitro* combination studies in DE19 cell culture system with rcDNA quantitation using hDNA assay:

Inhibitor A	Inhibitor B	Inhibitor A	Inhibitor B	Synergy	Synergy	Antagonism	Antagonism	Conclusion
		EC ₅₀ (ng/mL)	EC ₅₀ (nM)	Volume (μM ² %)*	Log Volume	Volume (μM ² %)*	Log Volume	
SIRNA-NP	TAF	0.624	44.52	6.26	0.9	0	0	Additive

*at 99.9% confidence interval

5 Example 26

In vitro combination of Compound 3 and GLS4

Study Goal

To determine whether a two-drug combination of compound 3 (a small molecule inhibitor of HBV encapsidation belonging to the sulfamoyl benzamide chemical class), and
 10 GLS4 (a small molecule inhibitor of HBV encapsidation belonging to the heteroaryldihydropyrimidine, or HAP, chemical class) is additive, synergistic or antagonistic *in vitro* using an HBV cell culture model system.

In vitro Combination in HepDE19 Experimental Protocol

In vitro combination studies were conducted using the method of Prichard and Shipman
 15 (1990). The HepDE19 cell line was developed as described in Guo *et al.* (2007). It is a human hepatoma cell line stably transfected with the HBV genome, and which can express HBV pregenomic RNA and support HBV rcDNA (relaxed circular DNA) synthesis in a tetracycline-regulated manner. HepDE19 cells were plated in 96 well tissue-culture treated microtiter plates in DMEM/F12 medium supplemented with 10% fetal bovine serum + 1% penicillin-
 20 streptomycin without tetracycline and incubated in a humidified incubator at 37°C and 5%CO₂

overnight. Next day, the cells were switched to fresh medium and treated with inhibitor A and inhibitor B, at a concentration range in the vicinity of their respective EC_{50} values, and incubated for a duration of 7 days in a humidified incubator at 37°C and 5% CO_2 . Both inhibitors were diluted in 100% DMSO and the final DMSO concentration in the assay was $\leq 0.5\%$. The two inhibitors were tested both singly as well as in combinations in a checkerboard fashion such that each concentration of inhibitor A was combined with each concentration of inhibitor B to determine their combination effects on inhibition of rcDNA production. Following a 48 hour-incubation, the level of rcDNA present in the inhibitor-treated wells was measured using a bDNA assay (Affymetrix) with HBV specific custom probe set and manufacturer instructions.

The RLU data generated from each well was calculated as % inhibition of the untreated control wells and analyzed using the MacSynergy II program to determine whether the combinations were synergistic, additive or antagonistic using the interpretive guidelines established by Prichard and Shipman as follows: synergy volumes $< 25 \mu M^2\%$ (log volume < 2) at 95% CI= probably insignificant; 25-50 $\mu M^2\%$ (log volume > 2 and < 5) = minor but significant 50-100 $\mu M^2\%$ (log volume > 5 and < 9) = moderate, may be important *in vivo*; Over 100 $\mu M^2\%$ (log volume > 9) = strong synergy, probably important *in vivo*; volumes approaching 1000 $\mu M^2\%$ (log volume > 90) = unusually high, check data. Concurrently, the effect of inhibitor combinations on cell viability was assessed using replicate plates that were used to determine the ATP content as a measure of cell viability using the Cell-TiterGlo reagent (Promega) as per manufacturer's instructions.

Results and Conclusion

Compound 3 (concentration range of 3.0 μM to 0.04 μM in a 3-fold dilution series and 5 point titration) was tested in combination with GLS4 (concentration range of 2.0 μM to 0.008 μM in a 2-fold dilution series and 9 point titration). The average % inhibition in rcDNA and standard deviations of 4 replicates observed either with compound 3 or GLS4 treatments alone or in combination is shown in Table 26a. The EC_{50} values of compound 3 and GLS4 are shown in Table 26b. When the observed values of two inhibitor combination were compared to what is expected from additive interaction (Table 26a) for the above concentration range, the combination was found to be largely additive, and very slightly antagonistic (Table 26b); as per MacSynergy II analysis and using the interpretive criteria described above by Prichard and

Shipman (1992), the degree of antagonism is minor but significant. No significant inhibition of cell viability or proliferation was observed by microscopy or Cell-TiterGlo assay in the analyzed samples.

5

10 Table 26a: *In vitro* Combination of Compound 3 and GLS4

[DRUG] COMPOUND 3 μ M	0	0.008	0.016	0.031	0.063	0.125	0.250	0.50	1.00	2.00	AVERAGE % INHIBITION GLS-4 (μ M)
3.000	84.49	94.6	93.75	93.69	93.74	93.46	93.72	86.8	97	98.0	
1.000	86.87	85.25	87.83	86.08	84.96	87.22	92.9	90.9	97.4	97.0	
0.330	56.68	56.86	55.08	56.52	73.47	81.88	93.03	97.6	97.5	95.3	
0.110	19.99	13.03	18.43	23.81	53.91	74.43	95.32	97.6	97.5	98.1	
0.040	11.14	-4.40	-1.03	14.94	28.87	73.14	93.01	97.9	97.7	97.4	
0.000	0	-1.17	-5.82	7.03	38.95	77.82	94.65	97.4	98.5	98.2	
[DRUG] COMPOUND 3 μ M	0	0.00781	0.0156	0.0312	0.0625	0.125	0.25	0.5	1	2	STANDARD DEVIATION (%) GLS-4 (μ M)
3	1.29	1.34	1.38	0.33	0.71	8.37	1.37	0.57	0.95	1.25	
1.000	3.85	5.47	1.98	1.54	3.07	2.38	0.89	0.56	0.8	1.43	
0.330	6.93	11.7	7.92	5.09	4.36	5.89	1.6	0.73	1.02	2.33	
0.110	15.95	12.75	10.23	4.24	14.05	5.6	1.61	0.83	0.72	0.31	
0.040	22.82	28.91	6.38	31.59	16.09	5.54	1.82	0.68	0.72	0.31	
0	0	17.17	15.42	15.34	10.95	6.65	1.39	1.47	0.59	0.35	
[DRUG] COMPOUND 3 μ M	0	0.00781	0.0156	0.0312	0.0625	0.125	0.25	0.5	1	2	ADDITIVE INHIBITION GLS-4 (μ M)
3	94.49	94.43	94.17	94.88	96.64	98.78	99.71	99.8	99.9	99.9	
1.000	86.87	86.72	85.11	87.79	91.98	97.09	98.3	99.5	99.7	99.7	
0.330	56.68	56.17	54.16	59.73	73.55	90.39	97.64	98.9	99.3	99.2	
0.110	19.99	19.05	15.33	25.61	51.15	82.25	95.72	97.9	98.5	98.5	
0.040	11.14	10.1	5.97	17.39	45.75	80.29	95.25	97.7	98.6	98.4	
0	0	-1.17	-5.82	7.03	38.95	77.82	94.65	97.4	98.5	98.2	

[DRUG]	0	0.00781	0.0156	0.0312	0.062	0.125	0.25	0.5	1	2	SYNERGY PLOT (99%) Bonferroni Adj.
COMPOUND 2											
μM											
3	0	0	0	-0.543	-1.506	-4.594	-5.304	-1.882	-1.898	0	SYNERGY 0
1.000	0	0	0	0	-1.002	-5.205	-4.655	-1.582	-0.752	0	log volume 0
0.330	0	0	0	0	0	0	-1.514	0	0	0	
0.110	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	ANTAGONISM -29.95
0.040	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0.34	
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	2	log volume -4.13

[DRUG]	0	0.01	0.02	0.03	0.06	0.13	0.25	0.5	1	2	SYNERGY PLOT (99.9%) Bonferroni Adj.
COMPOUND 3											
μM											
3.0	0	0	0	-0.103	-0.563	-4.102	-3.481	-1.124	0	0	SYNERGY 0
1.000	0	0	0	0	0	-2.837	-3.471	-0.837	0	0	log volume 0
0.330	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
0.110	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	ANTAGONISM -15.72
0.040	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	log volume -2.17
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Table 26b: Summary of results of in vitro combination studies in DE19 cell culture system with rcDNA quantitation using bdNA assay:

Inhibitor A	Inhibitor B	Inhibitor A EC ₅₀ (μM)	Inhibitor B EC ₅₀ (μM)	Synergy Volume ($\mu\text{M}^2\%$)*	Synergy Log Volume	Antagonism Volume ($\mu\text{M}^2\%$)*	Antagonism Log Volume	Conclusion
Compound 3	GLS4	0.272	0.077	0	0	-15.72	-2.17	Additive*
Compound 3	GLS4	0.272	0.077	0	0	-29.95	-4.13	Minor Antagonism [†]

*at 99.9% confidence interval

[†]at 95% confidence interval

5 All publications, patents, and patent documents are incorporated by reference herein, as though individually incorporated by reference. The invention has been described with reference to various specific and preferred embodiments and techniques. However, it should be understood that many variations and modifications may be made while remaining within the spirit and scope of the invention.

10

CLAIMS

What is claimed is:

1. A pharmaceutical composition that comprises a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and at least two agents selected from the group consisting of:
 - a) capsid inhibitors;
 - b) sAg secretion inhibitors;
 - c) reverse transcriptase inhibitors
 - d) cccDNA formation inhibitors;
 - e) oligomeric nucleotides targeted to the Hepatitis B genome; and
 - f) immunostimulators.
2. The pharmaceutical composition of any one of claim 1 that comprises at least one capsid inhibitor.
3. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 2 wherein the capsid inhibitor is selected from Bay-41-4109, AT-61, DVR-01, and DVR-23f.
4. The pharmaceutical composition of any one of claims 1-3 that comprises at least one sAg secretion inhibitor.
5. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 4 wherein the sAg secretion inhibitor is selected from the group consisting of PBHBV-001 and PBHBV-2-15.
6. The pharmaceutical composition of any one of claims 1-5 that comprises at least one reverse transcriptase inhibitor.
7. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 6 wherein the reverse transcriptase inhibitor is selected from the group consisting of lamivudine, adefovir, entecavir, telbivudine, and tenofovir.

8. The pharmaceutical composition of any one of claims 1-7 that comprises at least one cccDNA formation inhibitor.
9. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 8 wherein the cccDNA formation inhibitor is selected from CCC-0975 and CCC-0346.
10. The pharmaceutical composition of any one of claims 1-9 that comprises at least one oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome.
11. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 10 that comprises at least two oligomeric nucleotides targeted to the Hepatitis B genome.
12. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 10 wherein the oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome is selected from the group consisting of two way siRNA combinations of siRNAs 1m thru 15m.
13. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 10 wherein the oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome is selected from the group consisting of three-way siRNA combinations of siRNAs 1m thru 15m.
14. The pharmaceutical composition of any one of claims 1-13 that comprises at least one immunostimulator.
15. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 14 wherein the immunostimulator is selected from the group consisting of agonists of stimulator of IFN genes (STING) and interleukins.
16. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 1 that comprises the following combinations of agents:
 - an sAg secretion inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor;
 - an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and a capsid inhibitor;
 - an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;

an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and an sAg secretion inhibitor;
an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and an immunostimulator;
an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
a capsid inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome;
a capsid inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
a capsid inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor;
a capsid inhibitor and an immunostimulator;
a capsid inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome;
a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor;
a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor;
a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an immunostimulator;
a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
an sAg secretion inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome;
an sAg secretion inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
an sAg secretion inhibitor and an immunostimulator;
an sAg secretion inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
an immunostimulator and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome;
an immunostimulator and a capsid inhibitor;
an immunostimulator and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
an immunostimulator and an sAg secretion inhibitor;
an immunostimulator and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome;
a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor;
a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor; or
a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an immunostimulator.

17. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 1 that comprises the following combination of agents:

a capsid inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor;
a capsid inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an immunostimulator;

a capsid inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
a capsid inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
a capsid inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor and an immunostimulator;
a capsid inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
a capsid inhibitor and an immunostimulator and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
a capsid inhibitor and an immunostimulator and an sAg secretion inhibitor;
a capsid inhibitor and an immunostimulator and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
a capsid inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
a capsid inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor;
a capsid inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an immunostimulator;
a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and an sAg secretion inhibitor;
a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor;
a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor;
a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor and an immunostimulator;
a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an immunostimulator and a capsid inhibitor;
a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an immunostimulator and an sAg secretion inhibitor;
a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an immunostimulator and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor;
a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor;
a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an immunostimulator;
an sAg secretion inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
an sAg secretion inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and an immunostimulator;
an sAg secretion inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;

an sAg secretion inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
an sAg secretion inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor and an immunostimulator;
an sAg secretion inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
an sAg secretion inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor;
an sAg secretion inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an immunostimulator;
an sAg secretion inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
an sAg secretion inhibitor and an immunostimulator and a capsid inhibitor;
an sAg secretion inhibitor and an immunostimulator and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
an sAg secretion inhibitor and an immunostimulator and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
an sAg secretion inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor;
an inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
an sAg secretion inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an immunostimulator;
an immunostimulator and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
an immunostimulator and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and an sAg secretion inhibitor;
an immunostimulator and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
an immunostimulator and a capsid inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor
an immunostimulator and a capsid inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor
an immunostimulator and a capsid inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor
an immunostimulator and a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor;
an immunostimulator and a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor;
an immunostimulator and a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
an immunostimulator and an sAg secretion inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor
an immunostimulator and an sAg secretion inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
an immunostimulator and an sAg secretion inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
an immunostimulator and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor;
an immunostimulator and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
an immunostimulator and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor;
a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and an sAg secretion inhibitor;

a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and an immunostimulator;

a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;

a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor;

a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor and an immunostimulator

a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor;

a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor;

a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an immunostimulator;

a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor;

a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;

a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor and an immunostimulator;

a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an immunostimulator and a capsid inhibitor;

a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an immunostimulator and a cccDNA formation inhibitor; or

a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an immunostimulator and an sAg secretion inhibitor.

18. A kit comprising at least two agents selected from the group consisting of:

- a) reverse transcriptase inhibitors;
- b) capsid inhibitors;
- c) cccDNA formation inhibitors;
- d) sAg secretion inhibitors;
- e) oligomeric nucleotides targeted to the Hepatitis B genome; and
- f) immunostimulators

for use in combination to treat or prevent a viral infection, such as Hepatitis B.

19. The kit of claim 18 that comprises at least one reverse transcriptase inhibitor.

20. The kit of claim 19 wherein the reverse transcriptase inhibitor is selected from the group consisting of lamivudine, adefovir, entecavir, telbivudine, and tenofovir.

21. The kit of any one of claims 18-20 that comprises at least one capsid inhibitor.

22. The kit of claim 21 wherein the capsid inhibitor is selected from Bay-41-4109, AT-61, DVR-01, and DVR-23f.
23. The kit of any one of claims 18-22 that comprises at least one cccDNA formation inhibitor.
24. The kit of claim 23 wherein the cccDNA formation inhibitor is selected from CCC-0975 and CCC-0346.
25. The kit of any one of claims 18-24 that comprises at least one sAg secretion inhibitor.
26. The kit of claim 25 wherein the sAg secretion inhibitor is selected from the group consisting of PBHBV-001 and PBHBV-2-15.
27. The kit of any one of claims 18-26 that comprises at least one oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome.
28. The kit of claim 27 that comprises at least two oligomeric nucleotides targeted to the Hepatitis B genome.
29. The kit of claim 27 wherein the oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome is selected from the group consisting of two way siRNA combinations of siRNAs 1m thru 15m.
30. The kit of claim 27 wherein the oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome is selected from the group consisting of three-way siRNA combinations of siRNAs 1m thru 15m.
31. The kit of any one of claims 18-30 that comprises at least one immunostimulator.
32. The kit of claim 31 wherein the immunostimulator is selected from the group consisting of agonists of stimulator of IFN genes (STING) and interleukins.

33. The kit of claim 18 that comprises one of the following combinations of two agents:

- a capsid inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor;
- an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and a capsid inhibitor;
- an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
- an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and an sAg secretion inhibitor;
- an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and an immunostimulator;
- an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
- a capsid inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome;
- a capsid inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
- a capsid inhibitor and an immunostimulator;
- a capsid inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
- a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome;
- a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor;
- a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor;
- a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an immunostimulator;
- a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
- an sAg secretion inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome;
- an sAg secretion inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor;
- an sAg secretion inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
- an sAg secretion inhibitor and an immunostimulator;
- an sAg secretion inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
- an immunostimulator and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome;
- an immunostimulator and a capsid inhibitor;
- an immunostimulator and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
- an immunostimulator and an sAg secretion inhibitor;
- an immunostimulator and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
- a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome;
- a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor;
- a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
- a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor; or
- a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an immunostimulator.

34. The kit of claim 18 that comprises one of the following combinations of three agents:

- a capsid inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor;
- a capsid inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an immunostimulator;
- a capsid inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
- a capsid inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
- a capsid inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor and an immunostimulator;
- a capsid inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
- a capsid inhibitor and an immunostimulator and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
- a capsid inhibitor and an immunostimulator and an sAg secretion inhibitor;
- a capsid inhibitor and an immunostimulator and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
- a capsid inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
- a capsid inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor;
- a capsid inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an immunostimulator;
- a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
- a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and an sAg secretion inhibitor;
- a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
- a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
- a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor;
- a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
- a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor;
- a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor and an immunostimulator;
- a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
- a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an immunostimulator and a capsid inhibitor;
- a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an immunostimulator and an sAg secretion inhibitor;
- a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an immunostimulator and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
- a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor;
- a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor;
- a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an immunostimulator;
- an sAg secretion inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;

an sAg secretion inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and an immunostimulator;

an sAg secretion inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;

an sAg secretion inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;

an sAg secretion inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor and an immunostimulator;

an sAg secretion inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;

an sAg secretion inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor;

an sAg secretion inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an immunostimulator;

an sAg secretion inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;

an sAg secretion inhibitor and an immunostimulator and a capsid inhibitor;

s an Ag secretion inhibitor and an immunostimulator and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;

an sAg secretion inhibitor and an immunostimulator and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;

an sAg secretion inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor;

an inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;

an sAg secretion inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an immunostimulator;

an immunostimulator and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;

an immunostimulator and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and an sAg secretion inhibitor;

an immunostimulator and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;

an immunostimulator and a capsid inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor

an immunostimulator and a capsid inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor

an immunostimulator and a capsid inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor

an immunostimulator and a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor;

an immunostimulator and a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor;

an immunostimulator and a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;

an immunostimulator and an sAg secretion inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor

an immunostimulator and an sAg secretion inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;

an immunostimulator and an sAg secretion inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;

an immunostimulator and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor;

an immunostimulator and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;

an immunostimulator and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor;

a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;

a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and an sAg secretion inhibitor;

a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and an immunostimulator;

a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;

a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor;

a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor and an immunostimulator

a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor;

a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor;

a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an immunostimulator;

a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor;

a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;

a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor and an immunostimulator;

a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an immunostimulator and a capsid inhibitor;

a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an immunostimulator and a cccDNA formation inhibitor; or

a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an immunostimulator and an sAg secretion inhibitor.

35. A method for treating hepatitis B in an animal comprising administering to the animal, at least two agents selected from the group consisting of:

- a) reverse transcriptase inhibitors;
- b) capsid inhibitors;
- c) cccDNA formation inhibitors;
- d) sAg secretion inhibitors;
- e) oligomeric nucleotides targeted to the Hepatitis B genome; and
- f) immunostimulators.

36. The method of claim 35 wherein at least one reverse transcriptase inhibitor is administered to the animal.

37. The method of claim 36 wherein the reverse transcriptase inhibitor is selected from the group consisting of lamivudine, adefovir, entecavir, telbivudine, and tenofovir.
38. The method of any one of claims 35-37 wherein at least one capsid inhibitor is administered to the animal.
39. The method of claim 38 wherein the capsid inhibitor is selected from the group consisting of Bay-41-4109, AT-61, DVR-01, and DVR-23f.
40. The method of any one of claims 35-39 wherein at least one cccDNA formation inhibitor is administered to the animal.
41. The method of claim 40 wherein the cccDNA formation inhibitor is selected from CCC-0975 and CCC-0346.
42. The method of any one of claims 35-41 wherein at least one sAg secretion inhibitor is administered to the animal.
43. The method of claim 42 wherein the sAg secretion inhibitor is selected from the group consisting of PBHBV-001 and PBHBV-2-15.
44. The method of any one of claims 35-43 wherein at least one oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome is administered to the animal.
45. The method of claim 44 wherein at least two oligomeric nucleotides targeted to the Hepatitis B genome are administered to the animal.
46. The method of claim 44 wherein the oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome is selected from the group consisting of two way siRNA combinations of siRNAs 1m thru 15m.

47. The method of claim 44 wherein the oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome is selected from the group consisting of three-way siRNA combinations of siRNAs 1m thru 15m.
48. The method of any one of claims 35-47 wherein at least one immunostimulator is administered to the animal.
49. The method of claim 48 wherein the immunostimulator is selected from the group consisting of agonists of stimulator of IFN genes (STING) and interleukins.
50. The method of any one of claims 35-49 wherein at least one agent is administered orally.
51. The method of any one of claims 35-49 wherein at least two agents are administered orally.
52. The method of any one of claims 35-51 wherein an oligomeric nucleotide is administered intravenously.
53. The method of claim 35 wherein one of the following combinations of two agents is administered to the animal:
- a capsid inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor;
 - an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and a capsid inhibitor;
 - an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
 - an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and an sAg secretion inhibitor;
 - an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and an immunostimulator;
 - an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
 - a capsid inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome;
 - a capsid inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
 - a capsid inhibitor and an immunostimulator;
 - a capsid inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
 - a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome;

a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor;
a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor;
a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an immunostimulator;
a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
an sAg secretion inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome;
an sAg secretion inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor;
an sAg secretion inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
an sAg secretion inhibitor and an immunostimulator;
an sAg secretion inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
an immunostimulator and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome;
an immunostimulator and a capsid inhibitor;
an immunostimulator and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
an immunostimulator and an sAg secretion inhibitor;
an immunostimulator and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome;
a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor;
a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor; or
a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an immunostimulator.

54. The method of claim 35 wherein one of the following combinations of three agents is administered to the animal:

a capsid inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor;
a capsid inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an immunostimulator;
a capsid inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
a capsid inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
a capsid inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor and an immunostimulator;
a capsid inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
a capsid inhibitor and an immunostimulator and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
a capsid inhibitor and an immunostimulator and an sAg secretion inhibitor;
a capsid inhibitor and an immunostimulator and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
a capsid inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;

a capsid inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor;

a capsid inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an immunostimulator;

a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;

a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and an sAg secretion inhibitor;

a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;

a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;

a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor;

a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;

a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor;

a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor and an immunostimulator;

a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;

a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an immunostimulator and a capsid inhibitor;

a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an immunostimulator and an sAg secretion inhibitor;

a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an immunostimulator and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;

a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor;

a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor;

a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an immunostimulator;

an sAg secretion inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;

an sAg secretion inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and an immunostimulator;

an sAg secretion inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;

an sAg secretion inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;

an sAg secretion inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor and an immunostimulator;

an sAg secretion inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;

an sAg secretion inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor;

an sAg secretion inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an immunostimulator;

an sAg secretion inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;

an sAg secretion inhibitor and an immunostimulator and a capsid inhibitor;

s an Ag secretion inhibitor and an immunostimulator and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;

an sAg secretion inhibitor and an immunostimulator and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
an sAg secretion inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor;
an inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
an sAg secretion inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an immunostimulator;
an immunostimulator and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
an immunostimulator and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and an sAg secretion inhibitor;
an immunostimulator and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
an immunostimulator and a capsid inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor
an immunostimulator and a capsid inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor
an immunostimulator and a capsid inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor
an immunostimulator and a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor;
an immunostimulator and a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor;
an immunostimulator and a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
an immunostimulator and an sAg secretion inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor
an immunostimulator and an sAg secretion inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
an immunostimulator and an sAg secretion inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;
an immunostimulator and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor;
an immunostimulator and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
an immunostimulator and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor;
a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and an sAg secretion inhibitor;
a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an oligomeric nucleotide targeted to the Hepatitis B genome and an immunostimulator;
a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor;
a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor and an immunostimulator
a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor;
a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor;
a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor and an immunostimulator;

a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor and a capsid inhibitor;
a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor and a cccDNA formation inhibitor;
a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an sAg secretion inhibitor and an immunostimulator;
a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an immunostimulator and a capsid inhibitor;
a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an immunostimulator and a cccDNA formation inhibitor; or
a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and an immunostimulator and an sAg secretion inhibitor.

55. Any one of claims 1-54 provided the combination does not comprise a combination of only a capsid inhibitor and an interferon.



(51) International Patent Classification:

A61K 39/12 (2006.01) C07K 14/02 (2006.01)
A61K 39/29 (2006.01) C12N 15/51 (2006.01)
C07K 14/01 (2006.01)

(21) International Application Number:

PCT/US2017/012614

(22) International Filing Date:

6 January 2017 (06.01.2017)

(25) Filing Language:

English

(26) Publication Language:

English

(30) Priority Data:

62/276,722	8 January 2016 (08.01.2016)	US
62/343,514	31 May 2016 (31.05.2016)	US
62/345,476	3 June 2016 (03.06.2016)	US
62/409,180	17 October 2016 (17.10.2016)	US
62/420,969	11 November 2016 (11.11.2016)	US

(71) Applicant: **PROTIVA BIOTHERAPEUTICS, INC.**
[CA/CA]; 100-8900 Glenlyon Parkway, Burnaby, British
Columbia V5J 5J8 (CA).

(72) Inventors; and

(71) Applicants : **CUCONATI, Andrea** [US/US]; 100-8900
Glenlyon Parkway, Burnaby, British Columbia V5J 5J8
(CA). **LEE, Amy C. H.** [CA/CA]; 100-8900 Glenlyon
Parkway, Burnaby, British Columbia V5J 5J8 (CA). **RIJN-
BRAND, Cornelis A.** [NL/US]; 100-8900 Glenlyon Park-
way, Burnaby, British Columbia V5J 5J8 (CA). **SOFIA,
Michael J.** [US/US]; 100-8900 Glenlyon Parkway, Burn-
aby, British Columbia V5J 5J8 (CA).

(74) Agents: **MALEN, Peter L.** et al.; **VIKSNINS HARRIS &
PADYS PLLP**, 7851 Metro Parkway, Suite 325, Bloom-
ington, Minnesota 55425 (US).

(81) Designated States (unless otherwise indicated, for every
kind of national protection available): AE, AG, AL, AM,
AO, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BH, BN, BR, BW, BY,
BZ, CA, CH, CL, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DJ, DK, DM,
DO, DZ, EC, EE, EG, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, GT,
HN, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IR, IS, JP, KE, KG, KH, KN,
KP, KR, KW, KZ, LA, LC, LK, LR, LS, LU, LY, MA,
MD, ME, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MY, MZ, NA, NG,
NI, NO, NZ, OM, PA, PE, PG, PH, PL, PT, QA, RO, RS,
RU, RW, SA, SC, SD, SE, SG, SK, SL, SM, ST, SV, SY,
TH, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VC, VN,
ZA, ZM, ZW.

(84) Designated States (unless otherwise indicated, for every
kind of regional protection available): ARIPO (BW, GH,
GM, KE, LR, LS, MW, MZ, NA, RW, SD, SL, ST, SZ,
TZ, UG, ZM, ZW), Eurasian (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, RU,
TJ, TM), European (AL, AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE,
DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LT, LU,
LV, MC, MK, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, RS, SE, SI, SK,
SM, TR), OAPI (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ,
GW, KM, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

Published:

- with international search report (Art. 21(3))
- before the expiration of the time limit for amending the
claims and to be republished in the event of receipt of
amendments (Rule 48.2(h))

(88) Date of publication of the international search report:

31 August 2017

(54) Title: THERAPEUTIC COMPOSITIONS AND METHODS FOR TREATING HEPATITIS B

(57) Abstract: The invention provides therapeutic combinations and therapeutic methods that are useful for treating Hepatitis B.



INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US17/12614

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC - A61K 39/12, 39/29; C07K 14/01, 14/02; C12N 15/51 (2017.01)

CPC - A61K 39/12, 39/292; C07K 14/01, 14/02

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

See Search History document

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

See Search History document

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)

See Search History document

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
Y	WO 2015/172128 A1 (INDIANA UNIVERSITY RESEARCH AND TECHNOLOGY CORPORATION et al.) 12 November 2015; paragraphs [0009], 0029-[0030], [0032]-[0033], [0078], [0085]; claims 1-3, 7	1-3, 4/1-3, 5/4/1-3, 16, 18, 21/18, 22/21/18, 33, 35, 38/35, 39/38/35, 53
Y	(STRAY, SJ et al.) BAY 41-4109 has Multiple Effects on Hepatitis B Virus Capsid Assembly. Journal of Molecular Recognition. 27 September 2006; Vol. 19, No.6; pages 542-548; abstract; page 544, column 2, paragraph 3	1-3, 4/1-3, 5/4/1-3, 16, 18, 21/18, 22/21/18, 33, 35, 38/35, 39/38/35, 53
Y	US 2011/0218512 A1 (TULLIS, RH et al.) 08 September 2011; abstract; paragraph [0016]	18, 21/18, 22/21/28, 33
A	US 6,809,083 B1 (MUELLER, RA et al.) 26 October 2004; whole document	1-3, 4/1-3, 5/4/1-3, 16, 35, 38/35, 39/38/35, 53

☐ Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C.☐ See patent family annex.

* Special categories of cited documents:

"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance

"E" earlier application or patent but published on or after the international filing date

"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)

"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means

"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art

"&" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

18 May 2017 (18.05.2017)

Date of mailing of the international search report

14 JUL 2017

Name and mailing address of the ISA/

Mail Stop PCT, Attn: ISA/US, Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450

Facsimile No. 571-273-8300

Authorized officer

Shane Thomas

PCT Helpdesk: 571-272-4300
PCT OSP: 571-272-7774

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US17/12614

Box No. 1 Nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence(s) (Continuation of item 1.c of the first sheet)

1. With regard to any nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence disclosed in the international application, the international search was carried out on the basis of a sequence listing:
- a. ☐ forming part of the international application as filed:
☐ in the form of an Annex C/ST.25 text file.
☐ on paper or in the form of an image file.
- b. ☐ furnished together with the international application under PCT Rule 13*ter*.1(a) for the purposes of international search only in the form of an Annex C/ST.25 text file.
- c. ☒ furnished subsequent to the international filing date for the purposes of international search only:
☒ in the form of an Annex C/ST.25 text file (Rule 13*ter*.1(a)).
☐ on paper or in the form of an image file (Rule 13*ter*.1(b) and Administrative Instructions, Section 713).
2. ☒ In addition, in the case that more than one version or copy of a sequence listing has been filed or furnished, the required statements that the information in the subsequent or additional copies is identical to that forming part of the application as filed or does not go beyond the application as filed, as appropriate, were furnished.
3. Additional comments:

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US17/12614

Box No. II Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)

This international search report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1. ☐ Claims Nos.:
because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:

2. ☐ Claims Nos.:
because they relate to parts of the international application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful international search can be carried out, specifically:

3. ☒ Claims Nos.: 6-15, 23-32, 40-52, 55
because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

Box No. III Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 3 of first sheet)

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:

****Please See Supplemental Page-*****

1. ☐ As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers all searchable claims.
2. ☐ As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying additional fees, this Authority did not invite payment of additional fees.
3. ☐ As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
4. ☒ No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this international search report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:
Groups I+, claims 1 (in-part), 2 (in-part), 3 (in-part), 4 (in-part), 5 (in-part), 16 (in-part), 18 (in-part), 21 (in-part), 22 (in-part), 33 (in-part), 35 (in-part), 38 (in-part), 39 (in-part) and 53 (in-part)

Remark on Protest

- ☐ The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest and, where applicable, the payment of a protest fee.
- ☐ The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest but the applicable protest fee was not paid within the time limit specified in the invitation.
- ☐ No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT
Information on patent family members

International application No.
PCT/US17/12614

-***-Continued from Box No. III: Observations where unity of invention is lacking-***-

This application contains the following inventions or groups of inventions which are not so linked as to form a single general inventive concept under PCT Rule 13.1. In order for all inventions to be examined, the appropriate additional examination fees must be paid.

Groups I+, Claims 1-5, 16-22, 33-39, 53, 54; a capsid inhibitor and a sAg secretion inhibitor are directed toward a method for treating hepatitis B in an animal, comprising administering to the animal at least two agents selected from the group consisting of: a) reverse transcriptase inhibitors; b) capsid inhibitors; c) cccDNA formation inhibitors; d) sAg secretion inhibitors; e) oligomeric nucleotides targeted to the Hepatitis B genome; and f) immunostimulators; and a composition and kit therefor.

The method, composition and kit will be searched to the extent they encompass a capsid inhibitor (first exemplary agent), and a surface antigen (sAg) secretion inhibitor (second exemplary agent). Applicant is invited to elect additional agent(s), or classes thereof, to be searched. Additional agent(s) will be searched upon the payment of additional fees. It is believed that claims 1 (in-part), 2 (in-part), 3 (in-part), 4 (in-part), 5 (in-part), 16 (in-part), 18 (in-part), 21 (in-part), 22 (in-part), 33 (in-part), 35 (in-part), 38 (in-part), 39 (in-part) and 53 (in-part) encompass this first named invention and thus these claims will be searched without fee to the extent that they encompass a capsid inhibitor (agent), and a surface antigen (sAg) secretion inhibitor (agent). Applicants must specify the claims that encompass any additionally elected agent(s). Applicants must further indicate, if applicable, the claims which encompass the first named invention, if different than what was indicated above for this group. Failure to clearly identify how any paid additional invention fees are to be applied to the "+" group(s) will result in only the first claimed invention to be searched/examined. An exemplary election would be an agent encompassing a reverse transcriptase inhibitor (first exemplary elected agent).

No technical features are shared between the agents of Groups I+ and, accordingly, these groups lack unity a priori.

Groups I+ share the technical features including: a method for treating hepatitis B in an animal comprising administering to the animal at least two agents selected from the group consisting of: a) capsid inhibitors; b) sAg secretion inhibitors; c) reverse transcriptase inhibitors; d) cccDNA formation inhibitors; e) oligomeric nucleotides targeted to the Hepatitis B genome; and f) immunostimulators; a pharmaceutical composition that comprises a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and at least said two agents; and a kit comprising at least said two agents.

However, these shared technical features are previously disclosed by US 6,809,083 B1 to Mueller et al. (hereinafter 'Mueller').

Mueller discloses a method for treating hepatitis B in an animal (a method for treating hepatitis B in a mammal (an animal); abstract, column 3, lines 18-21) comprising administering to the animal at least two agents (comprising administering to the mammal (animal) at least two agents; abstract, column 3, lines 18-21, column 4, lines 28-39) including reverse transcriptase inhibitors (a nucleoside or nucleotide antiviral compound (reverse transcriptase inhibitor); column 2, lines 39-55; column 4, lines 28-39) and immunostimulators (and immunostimulators; column 4, line 36); a pharmaceutical composition that comprises a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and at least said two agents (a pharmaceutical composition that comprises a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and at least said two agents; column 4, lines 28-39, column 5, lines 23-30); and a kit comprising at least said two agents.

Mueller does not disclose: a kit comprising at least said two agents. However, It would have been obvious to a person of ordinary skill in the art at the time of the invention was made to have modified the disclosure of Mueller to have provided the at least two agents, as disclosed by Mueller, or a composition comprising said agents, as disclosed by Mueller, in a kit with instructions for use to perform a method of treatment of an animal for HBV, as disclosed by Mueller, in order to more readily and easily enable a medical practitioner to determine appropriate doses of the agents, and to administer the agents to said animal.

Since none of the special technical features of the Groups I+ inventions is found in more than one of the inventions, and since all of the shared technical features are previously disclosed by the Mueller reference, unity of invention is lacking.

摘要

本發明提供對治療乙型肝炎有用的治療組合及治療方法。